



Togg | T10X  
**Owner's Manual**



## Introduction

### Dear User,

We congratulate and thank you for your decision.

T10X is not just an automobile, but also a smart device that connects to Togg ecosystem and provides solutions that make your life easier.

This Owner's Manual is intended to help you get familiar with all functions of your new smart device and get the most out of it.

With this Owner's Manual which includes useful tips and information on how to use your smart device, you can learn how to best use Togg technology.

The graphics given in this Owner's Manual are for illustrative purposes only. Depending on the model and equipment specifications of your smart device, some illustrations may not exactly match the appearance of your smart device.

We hope you enjoy using your Togg smart device.

The information about all versions of Togg T10X are provided in this User Manual. Since the options, market-specific equipment or hardware are not directly specified in the Owner's Manual, you should pay attention only to the equipment level and version of device that you will purchase. The term "(if equipped)" is used to refer to some optional, non-basic features. Entire contents of this manual have been prepared to help you to get most out of your smart device. Togg adopts a continuous product improvement principle. Togg reserves right to make necessary changes deriving due to various technical and/or commercial reasons. For more information, please contact Togg Care (Customer Care Center).

### ONLINE OWNER'S MANUAL

By scanning the QR code below, you can access the digital version of the Owner's Manual with the most up-to-date content.



## General Information

### Environmental Protection

Working conditions and individual driving habits may have negative impacts on environment.

To contribute to environmental protection, we care about use of using your smart device in an environment-friendly way. Below you can find our recommendations for driving behaviors and environmental factors.

#### Working conditions:

- Check tire pressure frequently to make sure that it is appropriate.
- Avoid carrying unnecessary extra loads (for example, roof racks that you no longer need).
- Pay attention to energy consumption.
- Follow service intervals. Regular maintenance of your smart device will contribute to the protection of the environment.
- It is recommended to always have maintenance and repair works done by Togg Authorized Services.

#### Driving habits:

- Just focus on the road and your driving, and keep a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.
- Avoid rapid acceleration and braking.
- Drive in an energy-efficient way. Use ECO mode for an economical driving.  
The high-voltage battery contains compounds that are harmful to environment. Improper disposal of a high-voltage battery may result in environmental pollution.
- We recommended you first choose Togg Authorized Service for disposal of a defective/faulty high-voltage battery.
- Recycling materials are recommended to divert waste away from landfills and help your community and the environment when reducing or re-use is not available.

The relevant local environmental guidelines and regulations must be followed to protect the environment.

### Authorized representative

Togg Europe GmbH, Schelmenwasenstraße 34, 70567 Stuttgart, Germany

### Warning, Attention and Information

#### WARNING

*Remind you to be especially careful in those areas where carelessness can cause personal injury.*

#### ATTENTION

*To prevent you from making errors that could damage the vehicle as well as personal injury.*

#### INFORMATION

*Gives you added information that will help you complete a particular procedure.*

# Table of Contents

<b>1 Introduction</b> .....	<b>13</b>
1.1 Introduction to Electric Vehicle (EV) .....	13
1.2 Trumore Login .....	13
1.2.1 General Information .....	13
1.2.2 Creating Trumore Login .....	13
1.3 Vehicle Overview .....	14
1.3.1 Cameras and Sensors at Front .....	14
1.3.2 Cameras and Sensors at Rear .....	14
1.3.3 Interior Control Overview .....	14
1.4 General Warnings .....	15
<b>2 Safety</b> .....	<b>16</b>
2.1 High-voltage .....	16
2.1.1 Safety Instructions .....	16
2.1.2 High-voltage Battery Crash Deactivation .....	16
2.2 Seat Belts .....	16
2.2.1 Overview .....	16
2.2.2 Correct Seat Belt Positioning .....	17
2.2.3 Fastening Seat Belt .....	17
2.2.4 Unfastening Seat Belt .....	17
2.2.5 Adjusting Seat Belts During Pregnancy .....	17
2.2.6 Seat Belt Reminder .....	17
2.2.7 Seat Belt Functions .....	18
2.3 Child Safety .....	18
2.3.1 Safety Instructions .....	18
2.3.2 Child Restraint System (CRS) .....	19
2.3.2.1 Overview .....	19
2.3.2.2 Attachment points for Child Restraint System .....	20
2.3.2.3 Installing Child Restraint System .....	20
2.3.3 Child Presence Detection (CPD) (if equipped) ..	21
2.3.3.1 Overview .....	21
2.3.3.2 Child presence detection warnings .....	21
2.3.3.3 Deactivating child presence detection .....	22
2.3.3.4 Child presence detection limitations .....	22
2.3.4 Child Proof Locks .....	22
2.3.4.1 Rear window child lock .....	22
2.3.4.2 Rear door child proof lock .....	22
2.4 Airbags .....	23
2.4.1 Overview .....	23
2.4.2 Airbag Locations .....	24
2.4.3 Airbag Description and Function .....	25
2.4.4 Situations When Airbags Will Be Triggered ..	25
2.4.5 Situations When Airbags Will Not Be Triggered ..	25
2.4.6 Deactivating Passenger Airbag .....	25
2.4.7 Airbag Malfunction .....	26
2.4.8 Disposing of Airbag .....	26
<b>3 Opening &amp; Closing</b> .....	<b>27</b>
3.1 Remote Key & Smart Access .....	27
3.1.1 Remote Key .....	27
3.1.2 Mechanical Key .....	27
3.1.3 Loss/Replacement of Remote Key .....	28
3.1.4 Key Learning Procedure .....	28
3.1.5 Replacing Remote Key Cell .....	28
3.1.6 Emergency Vehicle Start with Discharged/ Undetected Remote Key .....	28
3.1.7 Electronic Immobilizer .....	28
3.1.8 Smart Access .....	28
3.1.9 Creating Primary Digital Key (if equipped) ...	29
3.1.10 Limitations of Digital Key .....	29
3.2 Doors .....	29
3.2.1 Locking/Unlocking from Outside of the Vehicle ..	29
3.2.2 Keyless Entry (if equipped) .....	30
3.2.3 Locking/Unlocking from Inside of the Vehicle (Central Locking) .....	31
3.2.4 Speed Sensing Door Locks .....	32
3.2.5 Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key ...	32
3.3 Windows .....	32
3.3.1 Safety Instructions .....	32
3.3.2 Opening and Closing Windows from Inside the Vehicle .....	33
3.3.3 Comfort Open/Close .....	33
3.3.4 Anti Trap Function .....	33
3.3.5 Correcting Malfunction .....	34
3.4 Hood & Tailgate .....	34
3.4.1 Opening and Closing Hood .....	34
3.4.2 Locking/Unlocking the Tailgate .....	35
3.4.3 Electric Tailgate (if equipped) .....	36
3.5 Anti Theft Alarm .....	36
3.5.1 Overview .....	36

3.5.2 Switching the Anti Theft Alarm System On and Off .....	37	4.4 Parking and Maneuvering .....	48
3.5.3 Switching Off a Triggered (Sounding) Alarm .....	37	4.4.1 Safety Instructions .....	48
3.5.5 Anti Theft Alarm Indication .....	37	4.4.2 Parking the Vehicle .....	48
3.5.6 Avoiding False Alarms .....	37	4.4.3 Park Assist .....	49
3.6 Panorooft System (if equipped) .....	37	4.4.3.1 Overview .....	49
3.6.1 Safety Instructions .....	37	4.4.3.2 Front/Rear park assist .....	49
3.6.2 Opening and Closing the Panorama Roof Sunshade .....	38	4.4.3.3 Side park assist (if equipped) .....	49
3.6.3 Panorooft Sunshade Malfunction .....	38	4.4.3.4 Park assist icons .....	50
3.7 Sun Visor .....	38	4.4.3.5 Activating/Deactivating the park assist .....	50
3.7.1 Overview .....	38	4.4.3.6 Park assist limitations .....	50
3.7.2 Adjusting Sun Visor .....	38	4.4.3.7 Malfunction in ultrasonic park assist .....	51
3.7.3 Vanity Mirror .....	39	4.4.4 Auto Parking (if equipped) .....	51
<b>4 Driving &amp; Driver Assistance .....</b>	<b>40</b>	4.4.4.1 Overview .....	51
4.1 Starting the Vehicle .....	40	4.4.4.2 Parking in the vehicle (Park In) .....	52
4.1.1 General Information on Electric Drive .....	40	4.4.4.3 Ending the auto park in .....	53
4.1.2 Starting the Vehicle with the Start/Stop Button .....	40	4.4.4.4 Leaving the parking space (Park Out) .....	53
4.1.3 Vehicle Modes .....	41	4.4.4.5 Ending the auto park out .....	54
4.1.4 Drive Positions .....	41	4.4.4.6 Cancelling the auto parking .....	54
4.1.5 Creep Mode .....	41	4.4.4.7 Auto parking limitations .....	54
4.1.6 Switching Off the Vehicle .....	42	4.4.4.8 Malfunction in auto parking .....	54
4.1.7 Engine Performance Limited .....	42	4.4.5 Surround View (if equipped) .....	54
4.2 Cruise Control .....	42	4.4.5.1 Overview .....	54
4.2.1 Overview .....	42	4.4.5.2 Parking guidelines .....	55
4.2.2 Using Cruise Control .....	43	4.4.5.3 Surround view system icons .....	56
4.2.2.1 Overview .....	43	4.4.5.4 Activating and deactivating the surround view system .....	56
4.2.2.2 Switching cruise control On/Off .....	43	4.4.5.5 Camera views .....	57
4.2.2.3 Activating the cruise control .....	43	4.4.5.6 Surround view system limits .....	59
4.2.2.4 Changing the cruise control speed .....	43	4.4.6 Rearview Camera .....	59
4.2.2.5 Resuming set speed .....	44	4.4.7 Rearview Camera Cleaning .....	59
4.2.2.6 Cancelling or resuming cruise control .....	44	4.5 Drive Mode .....	60
4.2.2.7 Display Icons .....	44	4.5.1 Overview .....	60
4.3 Braking .....	44	4.5.2 Drive Mode Controls .....	60
4.3.1 Overview .....	44	4.5.3 Eco .....	60
4.3.2 Using Brakes .....	45	4.5.4 Comfort .....	60
4.3.3 Brake Maintenance .....	45	4.5.5 Sport .....	60
4.3.4 Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) .....	45	4.5.6 Terrain Mode (if equipped) .....	60
4.3.5 Electronic Stability Control (ESC) .....	46	4.5.7 Tips for Increasing Economy .....	61
4.3.6 Electric Parking Brake .....	47	4.6 One Pedal Drive with Hold (if equipped) .....	61
4.3.7 Multi-Collision Brake .....	48	4.6.1 Overview .....	61
		4.6.2 Activating/Deactivating the One Pedal Drive with Hold .....	61

4.6.3	Limitations of One Pedal Drive with Hold . . .	62	4.8.5.4	Using Adaptive Driver Assistance . . . . .	75
4.7	Energy Recuperation . . . . .	62	4.8.5.5	Limitations of Adaptive Driver Assistance . . . . .	76
4.7.1	Safety Instructions . . . . .	62	4.8.6	Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control (if equipped) . . . . .	76
4.7.2	Recuperation . . . . .	63	4.8.6.1	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) . . . . .	76
4.7.3	Levels of Recuperation . . . . .	63	4.8.6.2	Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control (iACC) (if equipped) . . . . .	76
4.7.4	Adjusting Recuperation Level . . . . .	63	4.8.6.3	Display Icons . . . . .	77
4.8	Advanced Driver Assistance System (ADAS) (if equipped) . . . . .	63	4.8.6.4	Using Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control . . . . .	77
4.8.1	Driver Attention Assist . . . . .	63	4.8.6.5	Limitations of Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control . . . . .	80
4.8.1.1	Safety Instructions . . . . .	63	4.8.7	Speed Limiter . . . . .	81
4.8.1.2	Unsteady Driver Warning . . . . .	64	4.8.7.1	Intelligent Speed Limiter (iSL) . . . . .	81
4.8.1.3	Driver Monitoring System . . . . .	64	4.8.7.2	Display Icons . . . . .	81
4.8.1.4	Driver Attention Assist Settings . . . . .	65	4.8.7.3	Using Intelligent Speed Limiter . . . . .	82
4.8.1.5	Limitations of Driver Attention Assist . . . . .	65	4.8.7.4	Speed Limiter Settings . . . . .	83
4.8.2	Lane Safety Assist (if equipped) . . . . .	65	4.8.7.5	Limitations of Intelligent Speed Limiter . . . . .	84
4.8.2.1	Safety Instructions . . . . .	65	4.8.8	Traffic Sign Assist . . . . .	84
4.8.2.2	Description . . . . .	65	4.8.8.1	Safety Instructions . . . . .	84
4.8.2.3	Display Icons . . . . .	66	4.8.8.2	Overview . . . . .	84
4.8.2.4	Lane Safety Assist Settings . . . . .	67	4.8.8.3	Display Icons . . . . .	84
4.8.2.5	Unavailability Conditions of Lane Safety Assist System . . . . .	67	4.8.8.4	Activating/Deactivating Traffic Sign Assist . . . . .	85
4.8.2.6	Limitations of Lane Safety Assist . . . . .	67	4.8.8.5	Limitations . . . . .	85
4.8.3	Forward Collision Avoidance . . . . .	68	4.8.10	Active Emergency Stop . . . . .	85
4.8.3.1	Safety Instructions . . . . .	68	4.8.10.1	Overview . . . . .	85
4.8.3.2	Description . . . . .	68	4.8.10.2	Activation of Active Emergency Stop . . . . .	85
4.8.3.3	Forward Collision Avoidance Settings . . . . .	71	4.8.10.3	Operation Phases . . . . .	85
4.8.3.4	Limitations of Forward Collision Avoidance . . . . .	71	4.8.10.4	Cancelling Active Emergency Stop . . . . .	86
4.8.4	Corner Radar Features . . . . .	71	4.8.10.5	Display Icons . . . . .	86
4.8.4.1	Description . . . . .	71	4.8.10.6	Driver Screen Notifications . . . . .	86
4.8.4.2	Front Cross Traffic Alert (if equipped) . . . . .	71	4.9	Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS) . . . . .	86
4.8.4.3	Rear Cross Traffic Alert with Brake (if equipped) . . . . .	72	4.10	Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) . . . . .	86
4.8.4.4	Blind Spot Warning (if equipped) . . . . .	73	4.10.1	General Information . . . . .	86
4.8.4.5	Occupant Safe Exit (if equipped) . . . . .	73	4.10.2	Tire Pressure Display . . . . .	87
4.8.4.6	Rear Collision Warning (if equipped) . . . . .	74	4.10.3	TPMS Auto-Learning . . . . .	87
4.8.4.7	Activating/Deactivating Corner Radar Features . . . . .	74	<b>5 High-voltage Battery &amp; Charging . . . . .</b>	<b>88</b>	
4.8.4.8	Limitations . . . . .	74	5.1	High-voltage Battery Safety . . . . .	88
4.8.5	Adaptive Driver Assistance (if equipped) . . . . .	74	5.1.1	Safety Instructions . . . . .	88
4.8.5.1	Safety Instructions . . . . .	74	5.1.2	About High-voltage Battery . . . . .	88
4.8.5.2	Description . . . . .	75	5.1.3	High-voltage Battery Care . . . . .	88
4.8.5.3	Display Icons . . . . .	75	5.1.4	Disposing High-voltage Battery . . . . .	88

5.2 Charging Equipment .....	88	6.4.7 Entering the Text .....	105
5.2.1 Safety Instructions .....	88	6.4.8 Activating/Deactivating the Main Screen ..	105
5.2.2 Charging Cable .....	89	6.4.9 Rotary Knob .....	106
5.3 Charging Types .....	89	6.4.9.1 Overview .....	106
5.3.1 Overview .....	89	6.4.9.2 Operating rotary knob .....	106
5.3.2 Mode 2 .....	89	6.4.10 Main Screen Interaction .....	106
5.3.3 Mode 3 .....	89	6.4.10.1 Overview .....	106
5.3.4 DC Fast Charging/Mode 4 .....	89	6.4.10.2 Using the rotary knob for widget interaction .	106
5.4 Charging Operation .....	89	6.4.11 Main Screen Quick Access Overlay .....	107
5.4.1 Starting Charging Operation .....	89	6.4.11.1 Overview .....	107
5.4.2 Charging Status Display .....	90	6.4.11.2 Using the rotary knob for main screen quick	107
5.4.3 Ending Charging Operation .....	91	access overlay .....	107
5.4.4 Charge Settings .....	91	6.5 HMI Settings .....	107
5.5 Troubleshooting .....	92	6.5.1 Display Settings .....	107
5.5.1 Manually Unlocking the Charging Cable .....	92	6.5.2 Time .....	107
5.5.2 Manually Unlocking Charging Lid .....	93	6.5.3 Units and Language .....	107
5.5.3 Malfunction in Charging Operation .....	93	6.5.4 Sound Settings .....	107
<b>6 Display &amp; Features .....</b>	<b>94</b>	6.5.5 General Settings .....	108
6.1 Dashboard Overview .....	94	6.5.6 Screen Touch Sensitivity .....	108
6.2 Driver's Screen .....	94	6.6 Profiles & Customization .....	109
6.2.1 General Information .....	94	6.6.1 Profiles .....	109
6.2.1.1 Overview .....	94	6.6.2 Welcome and Goodbye Screen .....	109
6.2.1.2 Information tile .....	94	6.6.3 Managing the Profiles .....	110
6.2.1.3 Center tile .....	95	6.6.3.1 Adding the profile .....	110
6.2.1.4 Functions tile .....	96	6.6.3.2 Deleting the profile .....	110
6.2.2 Indicators and Telltales .....	96	6.6.3.3 Changing the profile password .....	110
6.2.3 Operating Driver's Screen .....	101	6.6.4 Activating the Profile .....	110
6.2.3.1 Overview .....	101	6.6.5 Face Recognition .....	111
6.2.3.2 Operating the information display (1) .....	101	6.6.5.1 Overview .....	111
6.2.3.3 Operating the function menu (2) .....	101	6.6.5.2 Adding the face recognition .....	111
6.2.4 Digital Assistant (if equipped) .....	102	6.6.5.3 Removing the face recognition .....	111
6.3 Control Screen .....	102	6.6.5.4 Limitations of face recognition .....	111
6.3.1 Control Display Overview .....	102	6.6.6 Valet Mode .....	111
6.3.2 Main Controls .....	103	6.6.6.1 Overview .....	111
6.3.3 Using Control Display .....	103	6.6.6.2 Activating the valet mode .....	111
6.4 Main Screen .....	104	6.6.6.3 Deactivating the valet mode .....	111
6.4.1 Overview .....	104	6.6.7 Guest Profile .....	112
6.4.2 Permanent Widget .....	104	6.6.7.1 Overview .....	112
6.4.3 Adding a Widget to the Main Screen .....	104	6.6.7.2 Activating the guest profile .....	112
6.4.4 Temporary Widget .....	104	6.6.7.3 Guest profile limitations .....	112
6.4.5 Quick Information Widget .....	104	6.6.8 Vehicle Factory Defaults .....	112
6.4.6 Widget Layout Types .....	105		

6.7 Connections . . . . .	112	6.9.5 Performing Software Reset . . . . .	125
6.7.1 Safety Instructions . . . . .	112	6.10 Cameras . . . . .	125
6.7.2 General Information . . . . .	112	6.10.1 External Cameras . . . . .	125
6.7.3 Bluetooth . . . . .	113	6.10.1.1 Overview . . . . .	125
6.7.3.1 Overview . . . . .	113	6.10.1.2 Front surround view camera (if equipped) . . . . .	125
6.7.3.2 Connecting the device . . . . .	113	6.10.1.3 Surround view camera on the mirror (if equipped) . . . . .	126
6.7.3.3 Disconnecting the device . . . . .	113	6.10.1.4 Rearview camera (if equipped) . . . . .	126
6.7.3.4 Managing the connected devices . . . . .	113	6.10.1.5 Front smart camera . . . . .	126
6.7.4 Wi-Fi . . . . .	113	6.10.2 Internal Cameras . . . . .	126
6.7.4.1 Overview . . . . .	113	6.10.2.1 Interior camera (if equipped) . . . . .	126
6.7.4.2 Connecting to Wi-Fi . . . . .	113	6.10.2.2 Driver infrared camera . . . . .	126
6.7.4.3 Managing the networks . . . . .	114	6.10.3 Limitations of the Cameras . . . . .	126
6.7.4.4 Connect to other . . . . .	114	6.11 Trumore App . . . . .	127
6.7.5 Hotspot . . . . .	114	6.11.1 Overview . . . . .	127
6.7.5.1 Overview . . . . .	114	6.11.2 Checking Device Information . . . . .	127
6.7.5.2 Activating/Deactivating the hotspot . . . . .	114	<b>7 Operations &amp; Controls . . . . .</b>	<b>128</b>
6.7.5.3 Changing the name and password of the hotspot . . . . .	114	7.1 Exterior Lighting . . . . .	128
6.7.5.4 Connecting the device . . . . .	114	7.1.1 Safety Instructions . . . . .	128
6.8 Togg Widgets . . . . .	115	7.1.2 Automatic Light . . . . .	128
6.8.1 Safety Instructions . . . . .	115	7.1.3 Position Light . . . . .	128
6.8.2 Media Player . . . . .	115	7.1.4 Switching Exterior Lights Completely Off . . . . .	129
6.8.3 Phone . . . . .	116	7.1.5 All Lights Off After Locking in Accessory . . . . .	129
6.8.4 Radio . . . . .	118	7.1.6 Light Scenario . . . . .	129
6.8.5 Owner's Manual . . . . .	119	7.1.7 Daytime Running Light . . . . .	130
6.8.6 Navigation (Go) . . . . .	119	7.1.8 Direction Indicator . . . . .	130
6.8.6.1 Overview . . . . .	119	7.1.9 Using High Beam and Flash High Beam . . . . .	130
6.8.6.2 Launching Go application . . . . .	119	7.1.10 High Beam Light Assist (HLA) (if equipped) . . . . .	131
6.8.6.3 Selecting destination . . . . .	120	7.1.11 Fog Light . . . . .	131
6.8.6.4 Traffic . . . . .	120	7.1.11.1 Overview . . . . .	131
6.8.6.5 Add stops . . . . .	121	7.1.11.2 Front fog light (if equipped) . . . . .	132
6.8.6.6 Map . . . . .	121	7.1.11.3 Cornering lights (if equipped) . . . . .	132
6.8.6.7 Map settings . . . . .	122	7.1.11.4 Rear fog light . . . . .	132
6.8.7 Screen Saver . . . . .	122	7.1.11.5 Reverse light . . . . .	133
6.8.8 Cluster Duplicate . . . . .	122	7.1.12 Parking Light . . . . .	133
6.8.9 Journey Data . . . . .	123	7.1.13 Brake Light . . . . .	133
6.8.10 Tru.Store . . . . .	123	7.2 Interior Lighting . . . . .	133
6.9 Software Updates . . . . .	124	7.2.1 Reading Light . . . . .	133
6.9.1 Overview . . . . .	124	7.2.1.1 Reading light front . . . . .	133
6.9.2 Software Update Settings . . . . .	124	7.2.1.2 Reading light rear (if equipped) . . . . .	133
6.9.3 Failed Software Update . . . . .	125		
6.9.4 Checking Software Release Notes . . . . .	125		

7.2.1.3 Reading light rear for panorooft (if equipped) . . . . .	133	7.5.1.2 Adjusting outside mirror . . . . .	141
7.2.2 Adjusting the Reading Light Settings . . . . .	134	7.5.1.3 Power folding outside mirror (if equipped) . . . . .	142
7.2.3 Courtesy Light . . . . .	134	7.5.1.5 Parking position . . . . .	143
7.2.4 Trunk Light . . . . .	134	7.5.1.6 Outside mirror heating . . . . .	143
7.2.5 Glove Box Light . . . . .	134	7.5.2 Camera Mirror System (if equipped) . . . . .	143
7.2.6 Ambient Lighting (if equipped) . . . . .	134	7.5.2.1 Safety instruction . . . . .	143
7.2.6.1 Overview . . . . .	134	7.5.2.2 Overview . . . . .	144
7.2.6.2 Adjusting the ambient light settings . . . . .	134	7.5.2.3 Camera mirror system operational modes . . . . .	144
7.2.6.3 Adjusting the footwell light settings (if equipped) . . . . .	135	7.5.2.4 Using the camera mirror system . . . . .	144
7.3 Seats . . . . .	135	7.5.2.5 Camera mirror system settings . . . . .	144
7.3.1 Safety Instructions . . . . .	135	7.5.2.6 Display Icons and Overlays . . . . .	145
7.3.2 Correct Seating Position . . . . .	136	7.5.2.7 Outside camera heating . . . . .	146
7.3.3 Adjusting Seat . . . . .	136	7.5.3 Rear View Mirror . . . . .	147
7.3.3.1 Overview . . . . .	136	7.5.3.1 Rear view mirror auto dimming (if equipped) . . . . .	147
7.3.3.2 Manual seats with lumbar support (if equipped) . . . . .	136	7.5.3.2 Rear view mirror manual dimming (if equipped) . . . . .	147
7.3.3.4 Electric seats (if equipped) . . . . .	137	7.6 Wipers and Windshield Washer . . . . .	147
7.3.4 Headrest Adjustment . . . . .	137	7.6.1 Wiper Controls . . . . .	147
7.3.4.1 Overview . . . . .	137	7.6.1.1 Front wipers . . . . .	147
7.3.4.2 Front headrest . . . . .	137	7.6.1.2 Rear wiper . . . . .	147
7.3.4.3 Rear headrest . . . . .	137	7.6.1.3 Rear wiper in reverse gear . . . . .	148
7.3.4.4 Removing the headrest . . . . .	138	7.6.1.4 Rain sensing wiper . . . . .	148
7.3.4.5 Installing the headrest . . . . .	138	7.6.2 Refilling Washer Fluid . . . . .	148
7.3.5 Rear Seats . . . . .	138	7.6.3 Checking and Replacing Wiper Blade . . . . .	149
7.3.5.1 Folding rear seat backrest . . . . .	138	7.7 Memory Function . . . . .	150
7.3.5.2 Folding down the backrest . . . . .	138	7.7.1 Safety Instructions . . . . .	150
7.3.5.3 Folding up the backrest . . . . .	138	7.7.2 Storing the Position . . . . .	150
7.3.5.4 Rear armrest with cupholder (if equipped) . . . . .	139	<b>8 Climate Control . . . . .</b>	<b>152</b>
7.3.5.5 Attachment points for child restraint system on rear seats . . . . .	139	8.1 Overview . . . . .	152
7.3.6 Seat Heating (if equipped) . . . . .	139	8.1.1 Brief Overview of Climate Control . . . . .	152
7.3.6.1 Overview . . . . .	139	8.1.2 Air Flow . . . . .	152
7.3.6.2 Front row seat . . . . .	140	8.2 Functions & Settings . . . . .	153
7.3.6.3 Rear row seat (if equipped) . . . . .	140	8.2.1 Overview . . . . .	153
7.4 Steering Wheel Controls . . . . .	140	8.2.2 Switching Climate Control On/Off . . . . .	153
7.4.1 Safety Instructions . . . . .	140	8.2.3 Air Distribution Control . . . . .	153
7.4.2 Adjusting the Steering Wheel . . . . .	141	8.2.4 Temperature Control . . . . .	154
7.4.3 Steering Wheel Switches . . . . .	141	8.2.5 Blower Control . . . . .	154
7.5 Mirrors . . . . .	141	8.2.6 Climate Control Features . . . . .	155
7.5.1 Classical Mirror . . . . .	141	8.2.7 Adjusting Air Vents . . . . .	156
7.5.1.1 Safety instructions . . . . .	141	8.2.8 Tips to Operate Climate Control . . . . .	156
		8.3 Defrost . . . . .	156

8.3.1 Overview . . . . .	156	10.2.1 Overview . . . . .	170
8.3.2 Max Defrost . . . . .	157	10.2.2 Safety Instructions . . . . .	170
8.3.3 Rear Window Heating . . . . .	157	10.2.3 Charging . . . . .	170
8.3.4 Windshield Heater (if equipped) . . . . .	158	10.2.4 Replacing Low-voltage Battery . . . . .	170
8.4 Air Quality Control . . . . .	158	10.2.5 Disposing Low-voltage Battery . . . . .	170
8.4.1 Overview . . . . .	158	10.3 Fuses and Relays . . . . .	170
8.4.2 Recirculation Control . . . . .	158	10.3.1 Overview . . . . .	170
8.4.3 Activating/Deactivating the Recirculation Mode . . . . .	158	10.3.2 Cabin Fuse Box . . . . .	171
8.5 Departure Plan . . . . .	159	10.3.3 Trunk Fuse Box . . . . .	173
8.5.1 Overview . . . . .	159	10.3.4 Identifying the Blown Fuse . . . . .	174
8.5.2 Display Icons . . . . .	159	10.3.5 Inspecting the Fuse . . . . .	175
8.5.3 Using Departure Plan . . . . .	160	10.4 Wheels and Tires . . . . .	175
<b>9 Storage Compartments . . . . .</b>	<b>161</b>	10.4.1 Tire Inflation Information . . . . .	175
9.1 Storage Locations . . . . .	161	10.4.2 Understanding Tire Specification . . . . .	175
9.1.1 Safety Instructions . . . . .	161	10.4.3 Tire Age . . . . .	176
9.1.2 Front Row Storage Locations . . . . .	161	10.4.4 Speed Symbols . . . . .	176
9.1.3 Second Row Storage Locations . . . . .	161	10.4.5 Tire Tread . . . . .	176
9.2 Glove Box Storage . . . . .	161	10.4.6 Snow Chains . . . . .	176
9.2.1 Overview . . . . .	161	10.4.7 Tire Damages . . . . .	177
9.2.2 Opening and Closing the Glove Box . . . . .	162	10.4.8 Storing Tires . . . . .	177
9.3 Center Console Storage . . . . .	162	10.4.9 Changing the Tire and Rim . . . . .	177
9.3.1 Overview . . . . .	162	10.5 Vehicle Jacking . . . . .	178
9.3.2 Wireless Charging (if equipped) . . . . .	162	10.5.1 Safety Instructions . . . . .	178
9.3.3 USB Ports . . . . .	163	10.5.2 Jacking Points . . . . .	179
9.4 Armrest & Cup Holders . . . . .	163	<b>11 Breakdown Assistance . . . . .</b>	<b>180</b>
9.4.1 Front Armrest . . . . .	163	11.1 eCall (Emergency Call) . . . . .	180
9.4.2 Cup Holders . . . . .	164	11.1.1 General Information . . . . .	180
9.5 Trunk Storage . . . . .	164	11.1.2 Automatic eCall . . . . .	180
9.5.1 Overview . . . . .	164	11.1.3 Manual eCall . . . . .	180
9.5.2 Loading . . . . .	165	11.1.4 eCall Malfunction . . . . .	180
9.5.3 Trunk Curtain Roller Blind . . . . .	165	11.1.5 Contacting Togg . . . . .	181
9.5.4 Trunk Storage Box . . . . .	165	11.1.6 TPS eCall . . . . .	181
9.5.5 Anchor Points . . . . .	166	11.2 Emergency Equipment . . . . .	181
9.5.6 Folding Rear Seat Backrest . . . . .	166	11.2.1 Safety Instructions . . . . .	181
9.5.7 12V Power Outlet . . . . .	167	11.2.2 Overview . . . . .	182
<b>10 Maintenance . . . . .</b>	<b>168</b>	11.2.3 Warning Triangle . . . . .	182
10.1 Maintenance Schedule . . . . .	168	11.2.4 First Aid Kit . . . . .	182
10.1.1 Overview . . . . .	168	11.3 Towing . . . . .	182
10.1.2 Service Interval Assist . . . . .	168	11.3.1 Overview . . . . .	182
10.1.3 Maintenance Table . . . . .	168	11.3.2 Safety Instructions . . . . .	182
10.2 Low-voltage Battery - 12V . . . . .	170	11.3.3 Towing Hook . . . . .	182
		11.3.4 Towing Other Vehicle . . . . .	183

11.4 Hazard Warning .....	183	13.3.5 Refrigerant in Air Conditioning System ....	193
11.4.1 Overview .....	183	13.3.6 Washer Fluid .....	193
11.4.2 Switching Hazard Warning On and Off ....	183	<b>Index .....</b>	<b>194</b>
11.5 Tire Repair Kit Usage .....	183	Abbreviation .....	200
11.5.1 Safety Instructions .....	183		
11.5.2 Filling Tire Sealant .....	184		
11.5.3 Inflating the Tire .....	184		
<b>12 Car Care .....</b>	<b>186</b>		
12.1 Washing the Vehicle .....	186		
12.1.1 Overview .....	186		
12.1.2 Steps for Exterior Cleaning .....	186		
12.1.3 Cleaning Sensors & Camera Lenses .....	187		
12.2 Vinyl and Upholstery Care .....	187		
12.2.1 Cleaning Vinyl Seats (if equipped) .....	187		
12.2.2 Cleaning Fabric Seats (If equipped) .....	187		
12.2.3 Cleaning Seat Belts .....	187		
12.2.4 Cleaning Floor Mats and Carpet .....	187		
12.2.5 Cleaning Fabric .....	188		
12.2.6 Cleaning Display and Screens .....	188		
12.2.7 Cleaning Plastic .....	188		
12.2.8 Cleaning High Gloss Plastic .....	188		
12.2.9 Cleaning Microfiber Seat (if equipped) ....	188		
12.3 Vehicle Storage .....	189		
12.3.1 General .....	189		
12.3.2 Body .....	189		
12.3.3 High-voltage and Low-voltage Battery Systems .....	189		
12.3.4 Tires .....	189		
12.3.5 Removing Your Vehicle from Storage .....	189		
<b>13 Technical Data .....</b>	<b>190</b>		
13.1 Vehicle Identification .....	190		
13.1.1 Vehicle Identification Number .....	190		
13.1.2 Statutory Plate .....	190		
13.1.3 Tire Pressure Plate .....	190		
13.2 Vehicle Specifications .....	190		
13.2.1 Vehicle Dimensions .....	190		
13.2.2 Weights and Loads .....	191		
13.3 Operating Fluids .....	191		
13.3.1 Overview .....	191		
13.3.2 Safety Instructions .....	192		
13.3.3 Brake Fluid .....	192		
13.3.4 Coolant .....	192		

# 1 Introduction

## 1.1 Introduction to Electric Vehicle (EV)

Electric vehicles are driven just like any other vehicle, but certain functions differ from vehicles with internal combustion engines. The electric vehicle is powered by an electric motor and uses energy stored in a high-voltage battery as a power source. The drive power is pure electric and it does not require any power from fossil fuel. As a result, electric vehicles are eco-friendly with zero emissions.

The electric vehicle is also capable of recovering energy when braking, which is termed as energy recuperation. The electric motor works as a generator and converts kinetic energy into electrical energy and is stored in the high-voltage battery.

### Main Components of Electric Vehicle

#### On-board charger

It is a device that is used to charge the high-voltage battery. It converts AC power into DC power and supplies to the high-voltage battery. It monitors high-voltage battery characteristics such as voltage, current, temperature, and state of charge while charging.

#### High-voltage battery

A high-voltage battery in the vehicle works as a power storage device. It is recharged using the charging cable and during regenerative braking.

#### Electric motor

The electric motor allows the mechanical conversion of the energy, which ultimately transmits the speed to the axle through the transmission, and thus drives the vehicle.

#### Power distribution unit

The power distribution unit converts the direct current from the high-voltage battery into the alternating current required by the electric motor. The device is responsible for executing acceleration and deceleration and controls the power output of the electric motor.

#### DC/DC converter

This device converts high-voltage DC power from the high-voltage battery pack to the low-voltage DC power needed to run vehicle accessories and recharge the 12-volt battery.

### 12-Volt battery

In an electric drive vehicle, the 12-Volt battery provides power to vehicle accessories and electronic components.

## 1.2 Trumore Login

### 1.2.1 General Information

Trumore login is a personal ID that gives you access to all Togg services using a single username and password.

The Trumore login can be created from the Trumore App.

#### INFORMATION

*Internet access is required to create the Trumore login.*

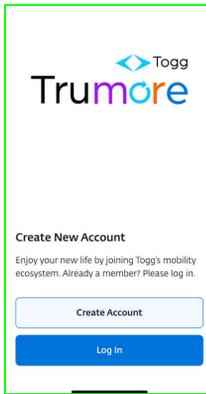
### 1.2.2 Creating Trumore Login

1. Scan the QR code to download the Trumore App.



TG02871

2. The user can create a Trumore login by following the on screen instructions in the app.



TG07174

## INFORMATION

**The entered email address must be used as a username to access your Trumore login.**

## 1.3 Vehicle Overview

### 1.3.1 Cameras and Sensors at Front



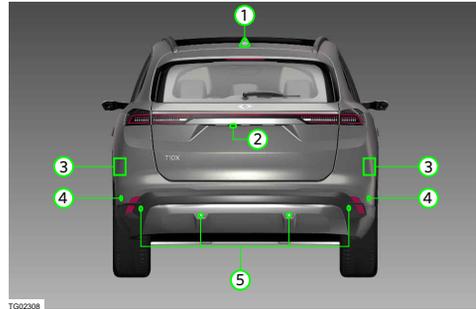
TG02307

1. Front smart camera
2. Surround view camera on mirror
3. Front RADAR, short-range (if equipped)
4. Front RADAR, long- range
5. Front ultrasonic sensor, side
6. Ultrasonic sensor, front
7. Front surround view camera

## ⚠ ATTENTION

**Do not install a license plate holder/frame which is bigger than the defined area for the license plate on the front bumper. There is a risk of sensor malfunction and detection problems of objects close to the frontal area of sensors.**

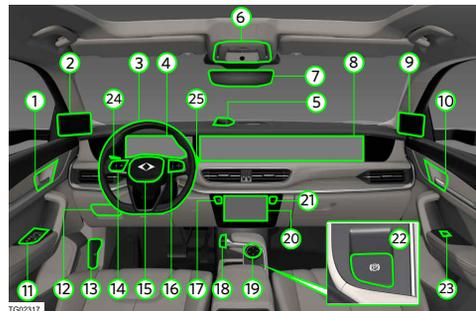
### 1.3.2 Cameras and Sensors at Rear



TG02308

1. Shark fin antenna
2. Rear surround view camera (if equipped)
3. Rear RADAR, short-range (if equipped)
4. Rear ultrasonic sensor, side
5. Ultrasonic sensor, rear

### 1.3.3 Interior Control Overview



TG02417

1. Driver door inside handle
2. Left camera mirror system display (if equipped)
3. Steering wheel
4. Driver's screen
5. Driver infrared camera
6. Overhead console
7. Inside rear view mirror
8. Main screen
9. Right camera mirror system display (if equipped)
10. Passenger door inside handle
11. Window lifter switch main
12. Fuse box cover
13. Hood opener
14. Left steering wheel switch
15. Right steering wheel switch
16. Gear shift
17. Handbrake
18. Center console
19. Driver's footwell
20. Passenger's footwell
21. Driver's seat
22. Passenger's seat
23. Rear seat
24. Left side mirror
25. Right side mirror

15. Horn pad
16. Right steering wheel switch
17. Start/Stop switch
18. Gear selector
19. Rotary knob
20. Control display
21. Hazard switch
22. Electric parking brake switch
23. Window lifter switch
24. Left stalk
25. Right stalk

## 1.4 General Warnings

### WARNING

- **Always be careful of both high-voltage and high temperature. The vehicle is equipped with a high-voltage battery and high-voltage components, which use high-voltage DC current to operate. The system can be hot during starting and when the vehicle is turned Off.**
  - **Never touch high-voltage components such as orange colored high-voltage cables, on board charger, high-voltage battery, power distribution unit or A/C compressor as there is a risk of serious injury. Always assume that the high-voltage battery is charged and all high-voltage components are energized when the ignition is switched Off.**
  - **There is a risk of serious injury or fire in the vehicle if the maintenance and repair of the high-voltage system are not carried out correctly. It is recommended you first choose Togg authorized service for your vehicle's maintenance and repair work.**
  - **Always pay attention to warning labels attached to a vehicle. There is a risk of burning from hot components.**
  - **For their own safety, all occupants of the vehicle must wear a seat belt on all trips.**
  - **The airbags in the vehicle are not a replacement for three-point seat belts. Airbags provide auxiliary protection when seat belts are worn correctly. For maximum protection, always wear seat belts at all times.**
  - **Never allow children or an infant to sit in the front passenger seat without a child restraint system. Always follow local laws and regulations.**
- **Do not allow children to sit unprotected in the vehicle, stand on the seat, or kneel while driving. A child can be thrown out of the vehicle in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injury or death to children and passengers.**
  - **Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it. There is a risk of injury or risk to life if a person stays in the vehicle for extended periods and is exposed to very high temperatures as a result.**
  - **Your vehicle is equipped with driving systems that assist you in driving, parking and maneuvering the vehicle. They are not a substitute for your attention to the surroundings and do not relieve you of your responsibility pertaining to road traffic law.**

## 2 Safety

### 2.1 High-voltage

#### 2.1.1 Safety Instructions

The vehicle is equipped with a high-voltage battery and high-voltage electrical systems. It is extremely dangerous to touch high-voltage components. It is recommended that you first choose a Togg authorized service for any repair work related to the vehicle's high-voltage electrical system.

Touching damaged high-voltage cables, the onboard charger, the high-voltage battery, the power electronics, or the A/C compressor can result in a fatal electric shock.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- ***There is a risk of serious injury or fire in the vehicle if the maintenance and repair of the high-voltage system are not carried out correctly. It is recommended that you first choose a Togg authorized service for your vehicle's maintenance and repair work.***
- ***Always pay attention to warning labels attached to a vehicle. There is a risk of burning from hot components.***

#### **⚠ WARNING**

***There is a risk of severe burns or electric shock that may result in serious injury or death.***

- ***Never disassemble or replace the high-voltage parts.***
- ***Never try to disconnect the orange color high-voltage cables.***

***It is recommended that you first choose a Togg authorized service for any necessary maintenance work.***

#### 2.1.2 High-voltage Battery Crash Deactivation

Your vehicle is equipped with the high-voltage battery crash deactivation feature. In the event of a crash, the high-voltage system is deactivated automatically to prevent vehicle occupants and other road users from electric shock. Once this feature is activated, you will not be able to start the vehicle. It is recommended that you first choose a Togg authorized service for assistance as the feature is only service reversible.

#### **Rules to follow in case of a crash to avoid injury:**

- If your vehicle is drivable, pull your vehicle off the road, apply the electric parking brake and turn Off the vehicle.
- Check your vehicle to see if there are exposed high-voltage parts or cables. To avoid personal injury, never touch high-voltage wiring, connectors, and other high-voltage parts. An electric shock may occur if exposed electric wires are visible when viewed from inside or outside of your vehicle. Therefore, never touch exposed electric cables.
- If the vehicle receives a strong impact to the floor while driving, stop the vehicle in a safe location and check the floor. Leaks or damage to the high-voltage battery may result in a fire. If you discover them, contact emergency services immediately.
- If a fire occurs in the vehicle, leave the vehicle as soon as possible. Using water or the incorrect fire extinguisher can result in serious injury or death from electrical shock.
- If you are not able to safely assess the vehicle due to vehicle damage, do not touch the vehicle. Leave the vehicle and contact emergency services. Advise first responders that this is an electric vehicle.

### 2.2 Seat Belts

#### 2.2.1 Overview

Using the seat belts is the most effective way to protect occupants if a collision occurs. Seat belts do not offer any protection in an accident if they are not worn. Incorrectly worn seat belts increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Make sure that the driver and all the passengers wear seat belts correctly when the vehicle is moving. Seat belts also hold vehicle occupants in the correct seating position in the event of a collision.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- ***The risk of serious or fatal injury increases if the seat belt is not fastened or worn incorrectly.***
- ***For their own safety, all occupants of the vehicle must wear a seat belt on all trips.***
- ***Never use one seat belt for two persons at the same time.***
- ***Check the condition of your vehicle's seat belts regularly. If you find damage to the belt webbing, the belt connections, the retractor, or the buckle, it is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service.***

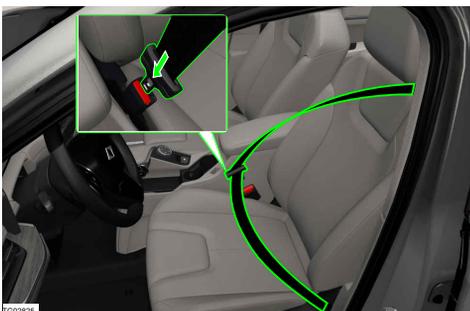
- **The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.**
- **Seat belts that are strained during an accident must be replaced.**
- **Belt straps must not be twisted or loose.**
- **Incorrect seat belt positioning can cause serious injury in the event of an accident or during sudden braking or driving maneuvers.**
- **Remove any loose or bulky items of clothing that prevent the seat belt from fitting correctly and restrict your freedom of movement.**
- **Do not position the seat belt over hard or breakable objects (such as glasses and pens).**
- **Seat belt is intended for use by adult occupants only.**
- **Make sure that seat belt is in the original position when not in use.**

### 2.2.2 Correct Seat Belt Positioning

Always fasten the seat belt and make sure it is positioned correctly. To ensure the seat belt is positioned correctly, following points must be taken care of:

- The lap portion of the seat belt must be located across the lap.
- The shoulder portion of the seat belt must rest over the center of the shoulder.
- The seat belt must always rest flat and securely on the body.

### 2.2.3 Fastening Seat Belt



#### INFORMATION

**Make sure that the seat belt is not trapped or twisted and that it is not rubbing against sharp edges.**

1. Hold the seat belt latch and pull the seat belt in a slow, continuous motion across your chest and lap.
2. Insert the belt latch in the belt buckle belonging to the seat until it locks with an audible click.
3. Pull on the belt to make sure that the belt is securely locked in the buckle.

### 2.2.4 Unfastening Seat Belt

1. Hold the seat belt firmly.
2. Press the button on the belt buckle.
3. Guide the seat belt back into its rollup mechanism.

### 2.2.5 Adjusting Seat Belts During Pregnancy

Pregnant women should always wear their seat belts. Position the lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt low across the hips below the belly and wear as tight as comfort allows. Position the shoulder belt such that it crosses the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest. Remove all slack from the belt and ensure that it fits close to the body without any twists. Consult your doctor for specific guidance.

#### ⚠ WARNING

**Never place anything between you and the seat belt to cushion the impact in the event of a collision.**

### 2.2.6 Seat Belt Reminder

#### Driver and front passenger seat

When the vehicle is ready for operation, the warning indicator illuminates on the driver's screen if you do not fasten your seat belt. When the vehicle speed reaches 20 km/h, you will be warned by flashing warning indicator light and a warning signal will sound for 30 seconds. After 30 seconds or vehicle speed reaches to 35km/h of initial warning, you will be warned by flashing warning indicator light and a warning signal will sound for 120 seconds if you still do not fasten the seat belt.

The indicator switches Off when you fasten your seat belt. The seat belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

#### Rear seat

The seat belt reminder warning is automatically activated each time when passenger is detected inside the vehicle. The seat belt reminder is also activated when a passenger unbuckles a rear seat belt during the trip.

## Display icons

Icon	Description
	Seat belt not fastened or error (Icon is steady)
	Seat belt not fastened or error (Icon is flashing)

Example of seatbelt reminder pop-up on the driver's screen information tile:



1. Seatbelt fastened
2. Seat occupied but seatbelt not fastened

### 2.2.7 Seat Belt Functions

#### Seat belt pretensioner

The seat belt pretensioners are designed to tighten the seat belts in the event of a crash. The pretensioners may also activate when a safety airbag deploys. It may reduce the number of injuries and deaths from crashes. This is a critical mechanism in the event of an accident because it firmly positions the occupants in their seats and provides them the utmost protection from their airbags.

#### INFORMATION

**Smoke may be released when pyrotechnic belt tensioners deploy. This is not a sign of a vehicle fire.**

#### ⚠ WARNING

**The pyrotechnic system can only provide protection during the first collision. If the pyrotechnic belt tensioners deploy, the pretensioning system must be replaced.**

## Seat belt load limiter

### INFORMATION

**Load limiter function is not applicable to rear center seat belt.**

Seat belts with load limiters reduce the force placed on the body by the seat belts during a collision. Seat belt load limiters help protect occupants from seat belt-inflicted injury. In the event of a crash, the pretensioner restrains the occupant until certain amount of force is applied. At this point, the load limiter releases the webbing gradually to ensure less force on the chest of the occupant.

### 2.3 Child Safety

#### 2.3.1 Safety Instructions

#### ⚠ WARNING

- **Children under the age of 12 years must be transported in a suitable child restraint system. Be aware of regulatory differences between countries.**
- **Do not allow children to sit unprotected in the vehicle, stand on the seat, or kneel while driving. A child can be thrown out of the vehicle in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injury or death to children and passengers.**
- **The child restraint system must be secured even if the child is not in it. Unsecured restraint system can be thrown into the vehicle during hard braking or accidents.**
- **Never modify the child restraint system. Only install accessories specifically approved by the child restraint system manufacturer.**
- **Do not secure more than one child in a child restraint system.**
- **Never leave a child unsupervised in a child restraint system.**
- **While installing child restraint system, always switch Off the seat heating feature of the corresponding seat.**
- **Do not place children or infants on the driver's or other passengers' laps while driving.**
- **Adjust the tilt and position of the seat in front of the child restraint system if necessary. Make sure there is enough space in front of the child in the child restraint system.**
- **The rear of the forward-facing child restraint system should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle seat.**

- **Adjust or remove the head restraint of the corresponding seat if the child restraint system is difficult to install on it.**
- **Always ensure that the backrest of the seat to which the child restraint system is attached is securely latched and does not move forward. The backrest with the child restraint system attached may move forward in the event of an accident.**
- **Only use the rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat after deactivating the front passenger airbag.**
- **Always secure the child restraint system in the rear seat. Exceptionally, if a child restraint system must be placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated.**
- **Incorrectly secured child restraint systems in the vehicle can lead to serious injury or death in the event of an accident. Always secure the child seat according to the manufacturer's instructions.**

### 2.3.2 Child Restraint System (CRS)

#### 2.3.2.1 Overview

To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries, children must always be secured in the vehicle with a child restraint system that is appropriate for their body size, weight, and age.

To minimize the risk of injury during an accident or maneuvering, children under the age of 12 years should always ride in the rear seats with a proper restraint system.

If the child is too large for the child restraint system, use the seat belts to secure the child. Always follow the local regulations, and you should be aware of the specific requirements in your country.

Install the child restraint system properly in the vehicle. Always use a commercially available Child Restraint System that meets the requirements of your country.

#### Recommended child restraint systems (ECE R129):

Stature (R129)	CRS	Installation
40-83 cm	Maxi Cosi Pebble 360, FamilyFix 360 base	Isofix with support leg
76- 105 cm	Britax Römer Trifix2 i-Size	Isofix and Top Tether
100 - 150 cm	Britax Römer Kidfix i-Size <sup>1)2)3)</sup>	Isofix and Belt

135 - 150 cm	Graco Booster Basic R129	Belt
--------------	--------------------------	------

1. Use secure guard.
2. It is recommended to pass the seat belt through the secure guard and XP-PAD.
3. The side impact extension (SICT) should be used and extended to the outermost when in use.

#### Suitable locations for child restraint system:

Seating position	Driver	Front passenger <sup>1)</sup>		2nd row		
		PAB ON	PAB OFF	Left	Centre	Right
Seating position suitable for Universal Belted (Yes/No)	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	No	No	No	R3	No	R3
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F1/F2X/F2/F3/No)	No	No	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	(B2/B3) <sup>2)</sup>	No	(B2/B3)	(B2/B3) <sup>2)</sup>	(B2/B3)

#### Important terms:

PAB - front passenger airbag.

Adjust or remove head restraint of the corresponding seat if interferes with child restraint.

1. Adjust the passenger seat to the rearmost position and height to the upper most position.

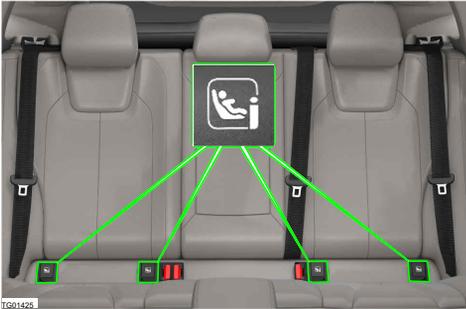
2. Only applicable for installation with seat belt.

### 2.3.2.2 Attachment points for Child Restraint System

#### ISOFIX or i-Size mounts

ISOFIX mounts are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each ISOFIX seating position that will accommodate a child restraint system with lower attachments. To use the ISOFIX mounts in the vehicle, you must have a child restraint system with ISOFIX attachments. The child restraint system manufacturer will provide you with instructions to use the child restraint system with its attachments for the ISOFIX mounts. ISOFIX mounts are provided in the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Their locations are behind the marked covers.

The ISOFIX mounts hold a child restraint system during driving and in an accident. This system is designed to make installation of the child restraint system easier and reduce the possibility of incorrect installation. The ISOFIX system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the child restraint system. The ISOFIX system eliminates the need to use seat belts to secure the child restraint system to the rear seats.



TC011426

#### Top-Tether Anchorage



FG02544

#### **WARNING**

**The top tether anchorage is designed specifically for a child restraint system. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death, never attach other objects to the anchor.**

Your vehicle is equipped with two top tether anchor points on the rear side of both rear outboard seat backrests. This must be used if the child restraint system manufacturer recommends attaching the top tether straps in combination with a lap belt or ISOFIX.

#### 2.3.2.3 Installing Child Restraint System

##### INFORMATION

- **To select, mount and use child restraint systems, observe the information provided by the child restraint system manufacturer; otherwise, the protective effect can be lost.**
- **Before installing child restraint system on front passenger seat, always deactivate the passenger airbag. (Refer to [2.4.6 Deactivating Passenger Airbag](#) )**
- **When installing universal child restraint system, always move the passenger seat to the rearmost position and height to the uppermost position.**

##### ATTENTION

**It is mandatory to use SecureGuard when installing the KidFix XP child restraint system.**

##### INFORMATION

**Recommendations on installing Britax Römer KidFix i-Size:**

- **Remove the head restraint of the corresponding seat on the vehicle. (Refer to [7.3.4.4 Removing the headrest](#) )**
- **Route the lap belt through the SecureGuard of the child restraint system.**
- **Adjust the child restraint system backrest to the fifth notch.**

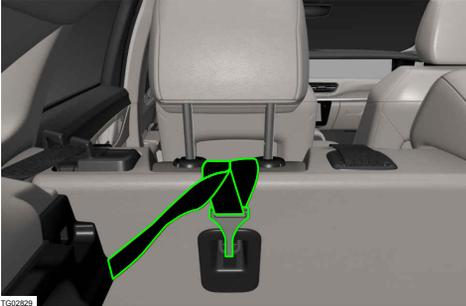
##### ATTENTION

**Child restraint system and its components can become very hot in intense sunlight. Touching hot components can cause burns. There is a risk of injury.**

- **Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight and cover it if necessary.**
- **Allow the child restraint system to cool before securing a child into it, if necessary.**

▪ **Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle.**

1. Properly secure the child restraint system to the vehicle. Child restraint systems must be secured to the vehicle with the lap belt or with the ISOFIX or top tether.



2. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured. After installing a child restraint system to the vehicle, push and pull the seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is securely attached to the seat.
3. A child restraint system secured with a seat belt should be installed as firmly as possible. However, some side-to-side movement can be expected. When installing a child restraint system, adjust the vehicle seat and seatback (up and down, forward and rearward) so that your child fits in the child restraint system in a comfortable manner.
4. Secure the child in the child restraint system. Make sure the child is properly strapped in the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

### 2.3.3 Child Presence Detection (CPD) (if equipped)

#### 2.3.3.1 Overview

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- **Even if the vehicle is equipped with the child presence detection feature, it is the driver's responsibility to ensure no child is left unattended in the vehicle.**
- **There is a risk of serious or fatal injury due to extreme heat or cold in the vehicle if a child is left unattended in the vehicle. Never leave a child or animal unattended in the vehicle.**

#### INFORMATION

- **Child presence detection will not be operated while the vehicle is being charged or preconditioned manually.**
- **Door unlocking does not cancel the child presence detection function warning; the door(s) must be opened.**
- **The child presence detection system may not be able to activate climate control in the case of a low state of charge in a high-voltage battery.**
- **Child presence detection may provide a false warning if any moving object is detected in the cabin area.**
- **A warning may be triggered for adults, children, or pets.**

Leaving an unattended child in a parked vehicle, even for a few minutes, can cause heat stroke and death. A child's inability to exit the vehicle on their own combined with a low tolerance for high temperatures requires that children never be left unattended in the vehicle.

The child presence detection feature alerts the driver if the child is detected in the vehicle if the doors are locked. It helps to protect the child from hyperthermia if the child is unintentionally left behind.

According to vehicle configuration, one or two radar sensor(s) monitor the vehicle interior and detect the presence of children by means of movement and respiration in the front or rear seat area.

#### 2.3.3.2 Child presence detection warnings

##### 1. Initial warning

An initial warning will be activated if a child is detected 10 seconds after locking the vehicle. The warning will be audible and visual for up to 5 seconds or until cancelled by flashing the hazard lights and activating dual horn.

The warning can be cancelled by unlocking the vehicle and opening any door.

##### 2. Escalation warning

The system will initiate an escalation warning if a child is still detected in the vehicle after 90 seconds of the initial warning being ended or cancelled and doors are closed and unlocked. The warning will be visual by flashing the hazard lights to seek attention from other road users.

The escalation warning(s) shall repeat at least every 1 minute for 20 minutes or until cancelled.

Hazard lights will be visible in the first 15 seconds of a minute once the escalation warning is started.

After the escalation warning is cancelled, the system will scan the interior again after all doors are closed and the vehicle is locked again. If a child is still detected in the vehicle, the system will initiate another escalation warning cycle until a door is opened.

### 3. Intervention

Unless the escalation warning is cancelled by opening any door, the system will start intervention since the occupant is still detected in the vehicle.

The intervention will occur in the following conditions:

- 5 minutes after the first escalation was triggered

The intervention will be in the form of:

- Reducing the vehicle interior temperature by activating the climate control.
- Sending a mobile notification via Trumore App.

#### 2.3.3.3 Deactivating child presence detection

The child presence detection feature can be temporarily deactivated through the control display. The deactivation will be valid for the single journey. The feature will be automatically activated when starting the new journey.

For deactivation, go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Alarms**



- Tap on the child & pet presence detection button to activate or deactivate the function.

The inactive status of the child presence detection will be indicated on the driver's screen.

### Display icon

Icon	Description
	Child presence detection deactivated (Icon is steady)

#### 2.3.3.4 Child presence detection limitations

The system may not function in the following conditions:

- If the child is covered with thick clothing such as a blanket.
- If the child wears a thick cloth or jacket, that reduces the CPD's detection capability of body (chest or limb) movement.
- The radars are blocked by metal or similar objects.
- If there is electronic interference around the vehicle.

#### 2.3.4 Child Proof Locks

##### 2.3.4.1 Rear window child lock

Driver can lock the rear power windows from driver side door window lifter switch to prevent accidental opening of rear windows by children.



- Press the button to lock or unlock the rear window control for passengers.

When the child lock is activated, the controls in the rear passenger compartment are disabled for the rear door windows.

##### 2.3.4.2 Rear door child proof lock

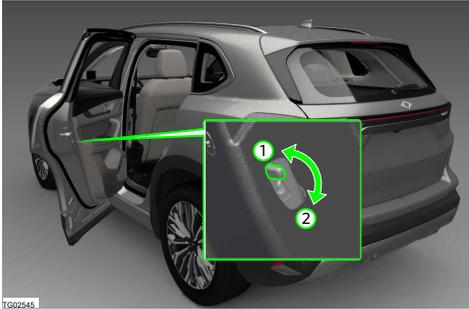
### WARNING

**If children accidentally open the rear door while the vehicle is in motion, they could fall out of the vehicle. The rear door child proof locks should always be used whenever children are present in the vehicle.**

The child proof lock is provided to help prevent children seated in the rear from accidentally opening the rear doors. The rear door child proof locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

The child proof lock is located on the edge of each rear door. When the child proof lock is in the lock position, the rear door will not open from rear door inside handle. The rear door can be opened using the outside door handle.

Deactivate the child proof lock to allow the rear door to open from the inside door handle.



### Activating child proof lock

Push the lock lever downward (2) before closing the door.

### Deactivating child proof lock

Push the lock lever upward (1).

## 2.4 Airbags

### 2.4.1 Overview

In conjunction with the three-point seat belts, the airbags are a safety system designed to provide the vehicle occupants with maximum protection from injury in an accident. The airbags are not a substitute for seat belts. Seat belts must always be worn, even when the front seats are equipped with front airbags.

#### **WARNING**

**The airbags in the vehicle are not a replacement for three-point seat belts. Airbags provide auxiliary protection when seat belts are worn correctly. For maximum protection, always wear seat belts at all times.**

#### **WARNING**

**Any object between the occupant and the airbag deployment area increases the risk of injury when the airbag is deployed.**

- **Never hold anything in your hands or on your lap while driving.**
- **Never carry anything in the passenger seat. In the event of a hard braking or driving maneuver, objects can enter the airbag deployment area and can be thrown dangerously out of the vehicle if the airbag is deployed.**
- **Never attach objects such as cup holders or phone holders anywhere in the airbag cover or airbag deployment area.**
- **Always make sure the airbag deployment area is not obstructed by passengers, children, or animals while driving.**

#### **WARNING**

**Each vehicle occupant must be in the correct seating position with the seat belts belonging to their seat fastened correctly throughout the journey.**

**Whenever the vehicle is in motion remember:**

- **Never stand in the vehicle or on the seats.**
- **Never kneel on the seats.**
- **Never tilt the backrest too far to the rear.**
- **Never lie on the seats in the passenger compartment and the rear bench seat.**
- **Never sit sideways or on the front edge of a seat.**
- **Never lean out of a window or against the instrument panel.**
- **Never put your feet out of a window or on the instrument panel.**
- **Never place your feet on the seat cushion or seat backrest.**
- **Never travel in a footwell especially children or animals.**
- **Never allow anyone to sit on the armrests.**
- **Never travel in the luggage compartment.**

#### **WARNING**

**Never allow children or an infant to sit in the front passenger seat without a child restraint system. Always follow laws and regulations.**

#### **WARNING**

**The airbag system can be deployed only once. The deployed airbag system has to be replaced.**

- **Deployed airbags and affected system components must be replaced immediately with new parts approved for your vehicle.**
- **It is recommended visit Togg authorized service for vehicle repairs and modifications.**

- **Do not modify the wiring or components of the airbag system. Never use recycled airbag parts.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**When the airbag deploys, fine dust particles and steam may be released. This is normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.**

- **Fine dust can irritate the skin and mucous membranes of the eyes and cause breathing difficulties, especially in people with asthma and other respiratory diseases. To reduce breathing difficulties, get out of your vehicle or open a window or door for fresh air.**
- **If exposed to dust, wash hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.**
- **Prevent your eyes or open wounds from dust entry. If dust enters your eyes, rinse with water and seek medical attention immediately.**
- **The rapid deployment sequence and airbag fabric may cause friction and skin burns.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The airbag inflates in fractions of a second at a very high speed when triggered. Never obstruct the airbag deployment area with accessories.**
- **Do not install seat protective covers unless they are specifically approved for use in your vehicle. Otherwise, the side and center airbags may not inflate after deploying.**

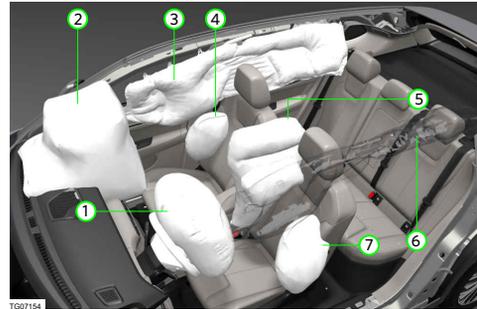
**⚠ ATTENTION**

**Never clean instrument panel or airbag covers with cleaning agents containing solvents. It will make the surface of the airbag module porous.**

**INFORMATION**

**Provide your passengers with all the information regarding safety measures.**

**2.4.2 Airbag Locations**



1. Driver airbag
2. Passenger airbag
3. Curtain airbag (Right)
4. Passenger side airbag
5. Center airbag (Far side airbag)
6. Curtain airbag (Left) (Shown transparent)
7. Driver side airbag

The installation location of an airbag is identified by the AIRBAG symbol.

**1. Driver Airbag**

The driver airbag is located at the center of the steering wheel. In the event of a frontal collision, the airbag helps to protect the head, neck, face, and chest of the driver.

**INFORMATION**

**When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the ring at the 9 O'clock and 3 O'clock positions.**

**Adjust the driver seat at least 25 cm distance between your breastbone and the hub of the steering wheel.**

**2. Passenger Airbag**

The passenger airbag is located in the instrument panel. In the event of a frontal collision, the airbag helps to protect the head, neck, face and chest of the front passenger.

**3. Curtain Airbag**

The curtain airbag are mounted along both sides of the side frame. This airbag protects vehicle occupants in front and rear seats against harmful crashes to the window on the side.

#### 4. Side Airbag (Driver and Passenger)

The side airbags are installed in the outer backrest frames of the front seats. This airbag protects the upper body of the driver and passenger in case of a side impact.

#### 5. Center Airbag (Far Side Airbag)

The far side airbag is integrated on the inside of the driver seat and helps to protect the head, shoulders and torso of the driver and passenger in the event of a side impact.

#### **WARNING**

***Incorrect use of the driver and front passenger seat could hinder the proper function of the far side airbag and cause serious injury.***

- ***Never remove the front seats from the vehicle or alter any components of these seats.***
- ***If too much pressure is applied to the backrest side bolsters, the center airbag may not be triggered correctly, may not trigger at all, or may trigger accidentally.***
- ***It is recommended for any damage to the original seat covers or around the seams of the center airbag unit must be repaired immediately by a Togg authorized service.***

#### **INFORMATION**

***The side and/or far side air bags may inflate when the vehicle is rolled over by a side impact collision.***

#### 2.4.3 Airbag Description and Function

The airbags can protect vehicle occupants during frontal and side collisions by reducing their movement in the direction of the collision.

When an airbag is triggered, it is inflated by a gas generator. This causes the airbag cover to break, and the airbag inflate forcefully to cover their deployment zones within milliseconds. Once a vehicle occupant wearing a seat belt starts to sink into the inflated airbag, the gas inside the airbag starts to escape to cushion the occupant and slow down their movement. This can reduce the risk of severe and fatal injuries. A triggered airbag will not always prevent other injuries from occurring, such as swelling, bruising, burning and grazing. The deployment of the airbag can also produce frictional heat. Airbags provide no protection for the arms or lower body.

Important factors in the triggering of the airbag include the nature (hard or soft) of the object that the vehicle hits, the angle of impact, and the vehicle speed.

The seat belts are always there to provide protection in situations in which the airbags are not triggered or have already been triggered.

The airbag system is part of the vehicle's overall passive safety concept. The airbag system can work effectively only when the occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly and have assumed a proper sitting position.

#### **INFORMATION**

***Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage in an accident do not necessarily give an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not.***

#### 2.4.4 Situations When Airbags Will Be Triggered

- Airbags are designed to trigger when the crash sensor on the front or side detects a sufficient impact.
- When a sufficient impact is detected by the front crash sensor in the event of a front collision, front airbags may get triggered. If an impact is detected by the front crash sensor, in the event of a side collision, there are chances of front airbags getting triggered.
- Curtain, side and center airbags are designed to trigger when the side crash sensor detects an impact. They may also trigger in the event of a front collision if the side crash sensor detects the impact.

#### 2.4.5 Situations When Airbags Will Not Be Triggered

- The ignition is switched Off in a collision.
- Minor front collision.
- Minor side collision.
- Rear collision.

#### 2.4.6 Deactivating Passenger Airbag

When installing a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag can be deactivated by using a control display.

For the deactivation of front passenger airbag,

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle  
→ Passenger AIRBAG ON/OFF**



- Tap on the button to activate or deactivate the passenger airbag.

The passenger airbag deactivation is only possible when the vehicle is in the park mode.

For vehicles with an IDCC software version older than 1.6.0 : The deactivation of the passenger airbag is not permanent. When the vehicle is stopped and restarted, the passenger airbag will be activated.

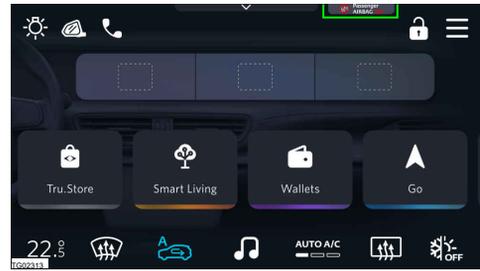
For vehicles with an IDCC software version of 1.6.0 or newer : The deactivation of the passenger airbag is permanent. When the vehicle is stopped and restarted, the passenger airbag status will not be changed.

Do not place a child restraint system in the front passenger seat when the front passenger airbag is not deactivated. Observe the instructions on the label outside of the sun visor.



TG01427

The status of the passenger airbag can be monitored in the top right corner of the control display.



**⚠ ATTENTION**

- **Only deactivate the front passenger airbag if a child seat has to be attached to the front passenger seat.**
- **Activate the front passenger airbag as soon as the child seat on the front passenger seat is no longer being used.**

**2.4.7 Airbag Malfunction**

The airbag indication on the driver's screen remains lit if the airbag system is malfunctioning.

The indicator will light up for a few seconds when the vehicle is turned On. If it remains continuously lit, it is recommended to contact a Togg authorized service immediately, and do not drive the vehicle.

Icon	Description
	Airbag system error (Icon is steady)

**2.4.8 Disposing of Airbag**

If you need to dispose of airbag, it is recommended that you visit a Togg authorized service.

Incorrect disposal procedures could cause personal injury.

## 3 Opening & Closing

### 3.1 Remote Key & Smart Access

#### 3.1.1 Remote Key

Depending on the vehicle variant, the vehicle may be supplied with one or two remote keys, each integrating a mechanical key. Each remote key contains a replaceable cell. A Trumore login or a driver profile with personal settings can be assigned to a remote key. It is necessary to take remote key with you when the vehicle is parked.

The operating temperature for remote key is  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  to  $60^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

#### **WARNING**

***If a person stays in the vehicle for extended periods and is exposed to very high temperatures, there is a risk of injury or risk to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when someone is inside.***

#### **INFORMATION**

***Always make sure your vehicle is locked. The remote key function can be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters (such as a mobile device or radio equipment) near the vehicle working in the same frequency range.***

#### Functions of remote key



TG01434

- **Unlock:** Push unlock button 1 to unlock the driver's door.
- **Tailgate:** Push trunk button 2 for long time unlock the tailgate only.
- **Lock:** Push lock button 3 to lock the doors/tailgate.

For more remote key functions. (Refer to [3.3.3 Comfort Open/Close](#) )

#### 3.1.2 Mechanical Key

A mechanical key is integrated into the remote key. To remove the mechanical key, follow the below procedure:

1. Press and push the side cover and remove it in the direction of the arrow.



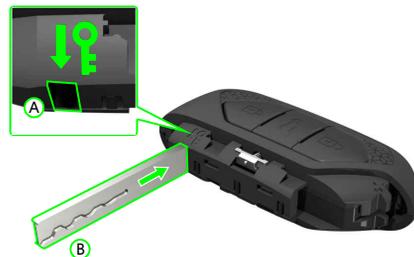
TG02534

2. Slide the mechanical key in the direction of the arrow to remove it.



TG02533

3. Insert the mechanical key (B) in a slot (A) as shown. The mechanical key is ready to use.



TG02532

4. After use, reverse the above steps to secure the mechanical key in the remote key.

### 3.1.3 Loss/Replacement of Remote Key

If a remote key is lost, it is recommended to get in touch with an authorized Togg service. Have this remote key deactivated. It is important to bring all keys with you. If it is necessary, replace mechanical locks.

Replacement or new remote keys can only be ordered from an authorized Togg service.

Three remote keys can be registered on a vehicle.

### 3.1.4 Key Learning Procedure

It is recommended to visit an authorized Togg service to pair remote key as they have trained personnel and the necessary tools.

### 3.1.5 Replacing Remote Key Cell

It is recommended to visit an authorized Togg service to replace the remote key cell.

#### INFORMATION

**The replacement battery for remote key must have the same specifications (CR2032) as the initial battery.**

When the battery in the remote key needs to be replaced, a message "Remote key has low battery!!" is displayed on the driver's screen.

#### WARNING

**This product contains a coin/button cell battery. If the coin/button cell battery is swallowed, it can cause severe internal burns in just 2 hours and can lead to death.**

- **Keep new and used batteries away from children.**
- **If the battery compartment does not close securely, stop using the product and keep it away from children.**
- **If you think batteries might have been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, seek immediate medical attention.**

#### WARNING

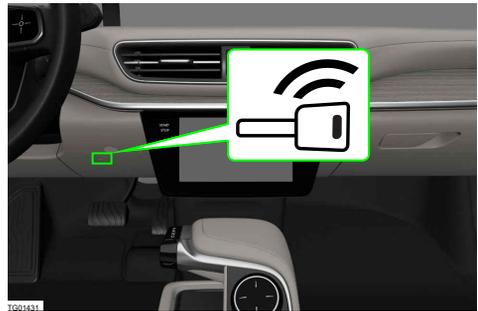
- **Risk of fire or explosion if the battery is replaced by an incorrect type.**
- **Disposal of a battery into fire or a hot oven, or mechanically crushing or cutting of a battery may result in an explosion.**
- **Leaving a battery in an extremely high temperature surrounding environment may result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas.**

- **A battery subjected to extremely low air pressure that may result in an explosion of the leakage of flammable liquid or gas.**
- **Ingesting a battery can cause severe chemical burns.**

### 3.1.6 Emergency Vehicle Start with Discharged/Undetected Remote Key

The vehicle may not detect the remote key if there is a remote control malfunction or the remote key cell is discharged.

To start the vehicle in this situation, follow the below steps:



1. Place the remote key near the transponder area highlighted in the illustration.
2. Press the Start/Stop button to turn On the vehicle.

### 3.1.7 Electronic Immobilizer

The immobilizer prevents unauthorized use of the vehicle. In some cases, it may not be possible to start the vehicle if there is a remote key from a different vehicle manufacturer on the key chain.

### 3.1.8 Smart Access

Smart access allows you to use a compatible smartphone or smart devices as a digital key to lock, unlock and start the vehicle.

Following functions can be used with smart access:

- Lock/Unlock
- Trunk open/close
- Start/Stop the vehicle

#### INFORMATION

**When using a smartphone as a digital key, always have a remote key with you to access your vehicle when smartphone is discharged.**

## Operating requirements

- Smartphone is compatible with the Trumore app.
- The vehicle is linked with the Trumore app through the registered owner account.
- Smartphone battery is sufficiently charged and Bluetooth connection is enabled.

### INFORMATION

**Smart access function may not work if the low-voltage battery state of charge is below the critical value.**

### 3.1.9 Creating Primary Digital Key (if equipped)

The registered owner's smartphone is enabled as the primary digital key in the vehicle. To do so, the registered owner must provide proof of authentication for their vehicle. The proof of authentication can be started via the Trumore app. Vehicle keys must be in the vehicle during process.

Follow the instructions in the Trumore app.

#### Digital key registration process

1. Visit your device app store and download the Trumore app.
2. Create account (Trumore login) over the Trumore app during vehicle purchase.
3. Open the Trumore app and select "My Smart Device" option from the navigation bar.
4. Select "Add Smart Device" button and follow the instructions.
5. After successful registration, open the vehicle with remote key and keep the remote key inside vehicle.
6. From "Connections" section in the vehicle press the "Access Devices" menu, press "Access Devices" button and place the smartphone on wireless charging pad located in the center console and start the connection from mobile app. Refer to [9.3.2 Wireless Charging \(if equipped\)](#)
7. After security check, smartphone and the vehicle will be connected and paired to each other over Bluetooth by entering the pairing code.

### INFORMATION

- **Your smartphone and vehicle must have internet access during registration of the digital key.**

- **Since the option is linked to VIN and smartphone, if you apply to Trumore Smart Device App to identify the new vehicle in case of purchasing a second-hand vehicle, old ownership will be cancelled.**

### ⚠ ATTENTION

**Delete all digital keys from the smartphone before selling it. This ensures that the smartphone can no longer be used for the vehicle.**

#### Starting vehicle with digital key

1. Place the smartphone with digital key in the middle of the wireless charging mat.
2. Make sure that the display is facing upwards.
3. Press the "Start" button on the Trumore app for "Start" demand.
4. After successful authentication, press "Start/ Stop Button" on the vehicle in 30s validity duration.

#### 3.1.10 Limitations of Digital Key

Certain limitations can prevent the proper operation of a digital key. Some of them are listed below:

- If the smartphone is shielded from the sensors in the vehicle by an unsuitable smartphone cover.
- If there are objects between the smartphone and its cover, for example, a card with a chip.
- If the smartphone is shielded due to buildings or metal objects.
- If the smartphone is far away, more than 6 meters.

## 3.2 Doors

### 3.2.1 Locking/Unlocking from Outside of the Vehicle

The buttons on the remote key can be used to lock or unlock all the doors and the tailgate at the same time. This can also be done without pressing the remote key buttons on models equipped with the optional keyless entry feature.

### ⚠ WARNING

**There is a risk of injury. Parts of the body can become trapped when the doors are operated. When you open or close the door, make sure that the area of movement of the doors is kept clear.**

#### Remote key range

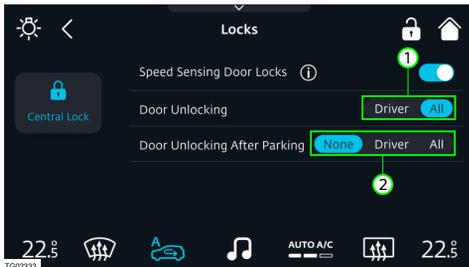
To unlock the vehicle with the remote key, it must be within the range of 30 m from the sides of the vehicle or tailgate.

## Locking and unlocking

Lock/Unlock settings can be changed using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Locks**



- Tap on the button (1) "Driver or All" to set the desired door unlocking.
- Tap on the button (2) "None or Driver or All" to set the desired door unlocking setting after engaging the electric parking brake.

To lock the vehicle, all the doors must be closed. If the tailgate is open, it will be locked and the alarm will be armed when it is closed.

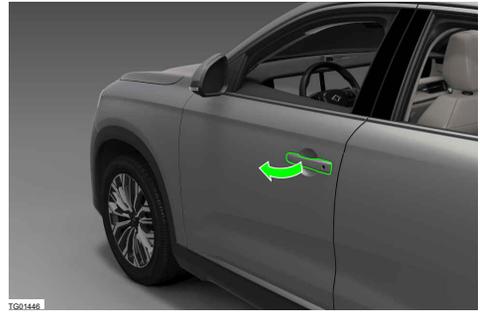


TG01443

### Locking

1. Close all the doors.
2. Press the lock button (2) on the remote key to lock.

## Unlocking



TG01446

1. Press the unlock button (1) on the remote key.
2. Open the door.

### Locking/Unlocking confirmation

The turn signals show that the vehicle is locked/unlocked with the remote key or keyless entry.

- **Locking:** The turn signals flash once and the outside rear view mirrors will fold in.
- **Unlocking:** The turn signals flash twice and the door mirrors will fold out.

### INFORMATION

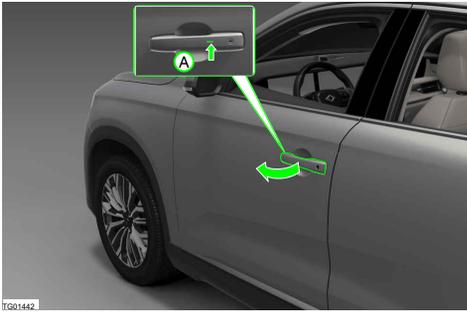
**When the vehicle is locked, confirmation will only be given if all the doors, the tailgate and the hood are closed.**

### 3.2.2 Keyless Entry (if equipped)

If the vehicle is equipped with this feature, it is only necessary to have a remote key in your possession to operate the central locking system. Models with keyless entry have a sensor on the outside of the front door handle for locking the vehicle and a pressure sensitive surface on the inside of the handle for unlocking. The tailgate has a touchpad used only for unlocking.

### INFORMATION

**Only one of a door handle's lock/unlock surfaces should be pressed at a time. If both areas are pressed simultaneously, the desired locking/unlocking action may not occur or may be delayed.**



## Locking

All the doors have to be closed before locking the vehicle.

1. Close all doors.
2. Press the pressure sensitive indentation (A) on the outside of the front door handles to lock.

## Unlocking

1. Pull a door handle to unlock.
2. Open the door or press the touchpad under the outer tailgate handle.

## Keyless entry limitations



Make sure your remote control is within 3 m from the front door handles and the tailgate.

## The system cannot function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle low-voltage battery has no charge.
- The remote control cell has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, e.g. keys or a cell phone.

## Keyless Go

For vehicles with keyless go feature, the remote key does not have to be physically handled in order to start the vehicle (the key only needs to be in the front part of the passenger compartment).

### 3.2.3 Locking/Unlocking from Inside of the Vehicle (Central Locking)

#### With buttons on driver's door:



Press the lock button on the driver's door to lock or unlock all the doors and the tailgate at the same time.

Driver and passenger doors can be locked and unlocked separately.

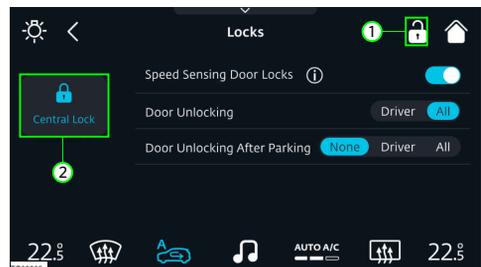
#### INFORMATION

*If the childproof lock is On, then rear doors cannot be opened from inside.*

#### With control display:

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Locks**



- Tap on the button (1) or (2) to lock or unlock all doors and the tailgate at the same time.

## INFORMATION

**Central locking button (1) is always available on the control display.**

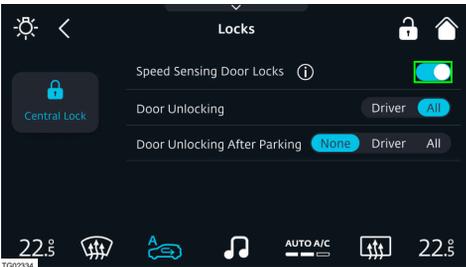
### 3.2.4 Speed Sensing Door Locks

All the doors and the tailgate will lock automatically when the vehicle starts to move at a speed of 10 km/h.

Speed sensing door locks can be activated or deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Locks**



- Tap on the speed sensing door locks button to activate/deactivate the speed sensing door locks function.

### 3.2.5 Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key

The driver's door can be locked/unlocked using a mechanical key if the remote key is not working.

Follow these steps:

1. Remove the mechanical key. (Refer to [3.1.2 Mechanical Key](#) )
2. Insert the mechanical key to the driver's door handle lock.
3. Turn the mechanical key clockwise/anticlockwise to unlock/lock the door.



## 3.3 Windows

### 3.3.1 Safety Instructions

#### **⚠ WARNING**

***There is a risk of entrapment when operating the window.***

***When operating the window, the parts of the body could be drawn in or become trapped between the window and window frame.***

- ***Make sure that nobody is touching the window.***
- ***If someone is trapped, release the button immediately or pull it in order to close the window again.***

#### **⚠ WARNING**

***There is a risk of being trapped when children operate the window. Children could be trapped if they operate the windows, particularly when unattended.***

- ***Activate the child lock for the rear passenger compartment windows.***
- ***When leaving the vehicle, always take the remote key with you and lock the vehicle.***
- ***Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.***

### 3.3.2 Opening and Closing Windows from Inside the Vehicle



TG014437

1. Front left door window
2. Front right door window
3. Rear right door window
4. Rear left door window
5. Rear window child lock

The windows can be operated under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is in accessory or ready mode
- For a short while after the vehicle is turned Off

The driver can control all power windows using window lifter switch on driver door panel. The window lifter switch in the other doors only operates the window in the respective doors.

All power window lifter switches are equipped with a two-stage function:

**One touch operation:** To open or close the window completely, press the window lifter switch down or pull the switch up briefly to the second level. The operation will stop if the window lifter switch is pressed or pulled again.

**Manual operation:** To select a position in between opened and closed, press or pull the window lifter switch to the first level until the desired window position is reached.

### 3.3.3 Comfort Open/Close

#### Opening and closing with remote key



TG014443

**Opening:** Keep the unlock button (1) on the remote key pressed after unlocking the vehicle.

The windows open for as long as the button (1) on the remote key remains pressed.

**Closing:** Keep the lock button (2) on the remote key pressed after locking the vehicle.

The windows close for as long as the button (2) on the vehicle key remains pressed.

#### **WARNING**

**When using remote closing systems, ensure they are operated only when the operator has a clear view of the vehicle to prevent anyone from being trapped by power-operated windows, roof panels, or partition equipment.**

#### **INFORMATION**

**When all of the windows are closed, the turn signals will flash.**

#### **INFORMATION**

**If the vehicle is equipped with the panoroof system, the sunshade will also close with the comfort close function.**

### 3.3.4 Anti Trap Function

The anti trap function for the windows can reduce the risk of injuries when the windows are closing. If the window is not able to close because of stiffness or an obstruction, the window will immediately open again.

The anti trap function is only an aid and is not a substitute for your attentiveness. During the closing process, make sure that no body parts are in the closing area.

### 3.3.5 Correcting Malfunction

After error detection, the following functions are disabled:

- Automatic movement (Up and Down)
- Soft stop function
- Anti trap function
- Comfort commands

To reset the function, proceed as below:

1. Close the windows and pull the window lifter switch up until the window stops after anti-pinch detection.
2. Pull the window lifter switch up again for a while.
3. Open the window completely and push the window lifter switch for a while.

If the one-touch function continues to malfunction after resetting, it is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service to have the system checked.

## 3.4 Hood & Tailgate

### 3.4.1 Opening and Closing Hood

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**If you open the hood because of vehicle fire in the front compartment, the following situations can occur:**

- You can come into contact with hot gases.
- You can come into contact with other escaping hot operating fluids.

**If fire in the front compartment is noticed, keep the hood closed and call the fire service.**

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**There is a risk of injury due to moving parts.**

**Components in the engine compartment may continue to run or start unexpectedly even when the drive system is switched Off. Observe the following if you must open the hood:**

- Switch Off the vehicle.
- Never touch the danger zones surrounding moving components, e.g. the rotation area of the fan.
- Remove jewellery and watches.
- Keep items of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**There is a risk of injury because of high-voltage components.**

- Orange cables should only be handled by trained and qualified Togg service personnel.
- Do not touch any components that have not been clearly described/explained in this manual.

#### **⚠ ATTENTION**

**There is a risk of damage to the hood or windscreen wipers.**

- Make sure that the windscreen wipers are not folded away when opening the hood.
- Always turn Off windscreen wipers before opening the hood.

#### **Opening**

1. Open the driver door.
2. With the hood fully closed, pull the hood release handle.



3. Turn the hood latch (1) below the front edge of the hood counterclockwise to unlock.



4. Lift and open the hood.

#### **Closing**

1. Push down the hood until it starts to close because of its own weight.
2. Ensure the hood latch is engaged in the lock. Push down on the hood to close it fully.

## Display icon

When the hood lock has been completely released, a warning symbol will illuminate on the driver's screen and an audible signal will sound. If the vehicle starts to move, the audible signal will be repeated several times.

Icon	Description
	Hood not closed

### WARNING

**If the hood is not closed properly, it can open suddenly while you are driving and fully obscure your view of the road. This can lead to accidents and dangerous injuries.**

- After closing hood, always check that the hood latch is properly engaged.
- If you notice that the hood is not closed properly while the vehicle is in motion, stop the vehicle safely as soon as possible and close the hood.
- Open or close the hood only when no one is in its movement range.

### INFORMATION

**If the warning symbol remains On or if the audible signal is given even if the hood is completely closed and locked, it is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service.**

## 3.4.2 Locking/Unlocking the Tailgate

The tailgate can be locked/unlocked in different ways, depending on whether the vehicle is equipped with the optional keyless entry feature.

### WARNING

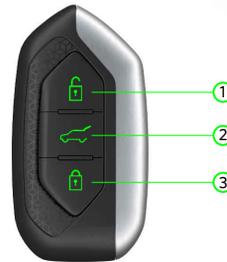
- **The tailgate swings outwards when opened. There is a risk of injury or material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is kept clear.**
- **The parts of the body can become trapped when the tailgate is being operated. There is a risk of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is kept clear.**

### ATTENTION

**There is a risk of damage because of uncontrolled opening or closing of the tailgate.**

- **Make sure there is sufficient clearance behind and above the vehicle (e.g. roof transport systems the garage ceiling).**
- **Do not allow a load to protrude over the edge of the luggage compartment.**

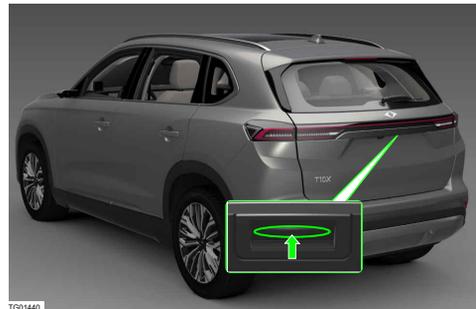
## Unlocking with remote key



TG01434

1. Long press the tailgate button (2) on the remote key to unlock the tailgate.
2. Open the tailgate.

## Keyless unlocking



TG01440

1. With the remote key in your possession, to unlock the tailgate, press lightly on the touchpad below the outer tailgate handle. If the remote key is not detected, the tailgate cannot be unlocked/opened.
2. Lift and open the tailgate fully.

### ATTENTION

- **When pressing the touchpad, only light pressure is necessary to release the tailgate's electronic locking mechanism.**
- **When opening the tailgate, pull it up with the use of the handle. Too much pressure on the touchpad can damage its electrical connections.**

## Unlocking the tailgate from inside the vehicle

The tailgate can be unlocked from inside the vehicle.

- Press the central locking switch on the driver's door to unlock the tailgate.

## Locking with the remote key

Press the vehicle lock button (3) on the remote key.

### 3.4.3 Electric Tailgate (if equipped)

#### **WARNING**

**Be careful when opening/closing the tailgate as there is a risk of injury. Before opening/closing, make sure that no one is in the path of the tailgate as an injury can occur.**

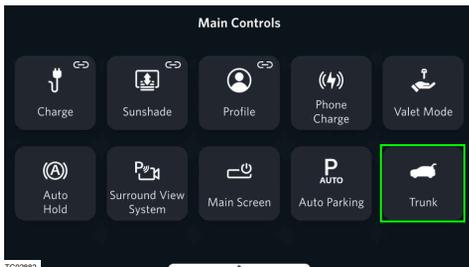
## Opening the tailgate

The power tailgate can be opened electrically by:

- Pressing and holding the button on the remote key until the tailgate starts to open.  
Or
- Pressing lightly on the touchpad below the outer tailgate handle.  
Or

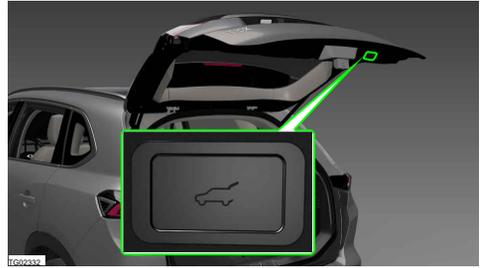
Go to:

#### Control Display → Main Controls



- Tap on the trunk button to open the tailgate.

## Closing the tailgate



The tailgate can be closed by the remote key or by pressing the inside switch on the lower edge of the tailgate.

If the remote key is not close enough to the tailgate, automatic locking/unlocking/opening/closing will not be possible.

## Interrupting opening/closing

- Press the button on the remote key.
- Press either of the switch on the lower edge of the tailgate.
- Press lightly on the touchpad below the outer tailgate handle.

## Adjusting the opening height of the tailgate

1. Press the touchpad on the tailgate. The tailgate will start to open.
2. Press the touchpad again at the desired opening height. The tailgate will stop opening.
3. Long press on the touchpad to store the position.

## Display icons

Icon	Description
	Electric tailgate fault (Icon is steady)

## 3.5 Anti Theft Alarm

### 3.5.1 Overview

If the anti theft alarm system detects a vehicle break-in, audio and visual warning signals are triggered. The anti theft alarm system is switched On or Off when locking or unlocking your vehicle. If the alarm is triggered, it will shut Off automatically after a certain amount of time.

The following conditions will trigger the alarm:

- A door/hood/tailgate is opened.

- There is a change in the vehicle's angle of inclination, for instance, if an attempt is made to jack it up and steal the wheels or to raise it prior to towing away.

### 3.5.2 Switching the Anti Theft Alarm System On and Off

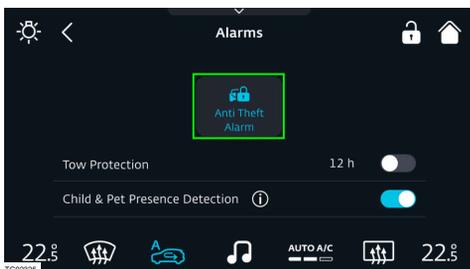
The anti theft alarm system is turned On automatically after approximately 1 second in the following situations:

- After locking the vehicle with the remote key
- After locking the vehicle using keyless entry

The alarm system is deactivated when the vehicle is unlocked. The anti theft alarm can be turned On/Off using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Alarms**



- Tap on the Anti Theft Alarm button to turn On/Off the function.

### 3.5.3 Switching Off a Triggered (Sounding) Alarm

Triggered antitheft alarm can be switched Off using:

#### Remote key

Press the Lock/Unlock button on the remote key.

Or

Press the Start/Stop button with the remote key in possession.

#### Keyless entry

With the remote key outside the vehicle, touch the inner surface of the front door handle.

#### Mechanical key

Unlock the vehicle with the mechanical key. (Refer to [3.2.5 Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key](#) )

### 3.5.5 Anti Theft Alarm Indication

The following occurs if the anti theft alarm has been triggered:

- **Audible warning:** The audible warning will sound for 30 seconds or until the anti theft alarm is turned Off.
- **Visual warning:** Hazard warning lights will flash for 5 minutes or until the anti theft alarm is turned Off.

#### INFORMATION

**To safeguard operation of the anti theft alarm system, do not modify the system.**

### 3.5.6 Avoiding False Alarms

The inclination sensor and anti theft alarm system may trigger an alarm even though no unauthorized activity is taking place.

False warnings may occur:

- In washing bays or car washes
- In lifted garages
- When transporting the vehicle via motorail, car ferry or trailer
- When there are pets in the vehicle.

## 3.6 Panorooft System (if equipped)

### 3.6.1 Safety Instructions

#### ⚠ WARNING

*There is a risk of getting trapped when operating the panorama roof sunshade, particularly when operated by children. Always keep the panorama roof sunshade movement area free when operating. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.*

#### ⚠ ATTENTION

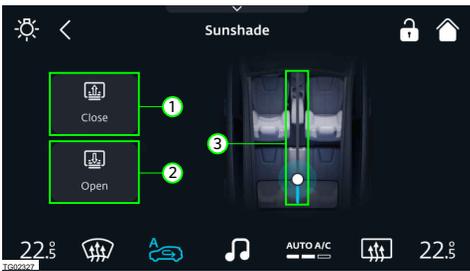
- *There is a risk of damage to the sunshade from sharp or protruding objects. When operating the panorama roof sunshade, always keep the movement area free from objects.*
- *It is advised not to open or close the panorooft sunshade while driving the vehicle with windows open. There is a risk of damage to the panorooft sunshade system.*

### 3.6.2 Opening and Closing the Panorama Roof Sunshade

The sunshade of the panorama roof is electrically adjustable when the vehicle is turned On. To operate the sunshade using the control display,

Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls → Sunshade**



The following buttons are displayed on the control display screen:

1. Close button
2. Open button
3. Position adjustment slider (with top view of a vehicle)

#### Opening and closing using the buttons

- Press the "Open" or "Close" button once to fully open or close the sunshade.
- To partially open or close the sunshade, press and hold the "Open" or "Close" button pressed until the desired position is reached.

#### Opening and closing using the position adjustment slider

Using the position adjustment slider, the sunshade can be adjusted in 10 different positions when the sunshade is stationary.

- To adjust the sunshade, "Drag and Drop" the slide to the desired position.

#### Interrupting opening/closing operation

- Press the "Open" or "Close" button.
- Press and hold the "Open" or "Close" button.
- Use the "Drag and Drop" operation on the position adjustment slider.

### 3.6.3 Panorooft Sunshade Malfunction

The table below explains panorooft sunshade status messages displayed on the driver's screen.

Information	Message on the driver's screen
Pinch detection	Sunshade pinching detected
Malfunction	Sunshade not normalized
During malfunction correction	Sunshade initialization running

If there is a malfunction in the panorooft sunshade system, a warning message will be displayed to alert the driver.

In case of malfunction, only the "Close" and "Open" buttons will be functional to perform the normalization procedure.

To correct the malfunction,

- Press and hold the "Close" button pressed until the warning message is cleared.

The ongoing normalization procedure will be displayed on the control display.

If the panorooft sunshade continues to malfunction after normalization, it is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service to have the system checked.

### 3.7 Sun Visor

#### 3.7.1 Overview

The sun visors can be used to block the glare coming through the windshield or windows.

#### 3.7.2 Adjusting Sun Visor

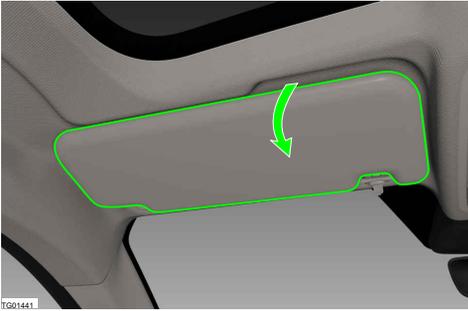
##### **ATTENTION**

***Driving with the sun visors folded down can reduce your view of the road. Sun visors should always be folded away if they are not being used.***

#### Protection of glare at front glare

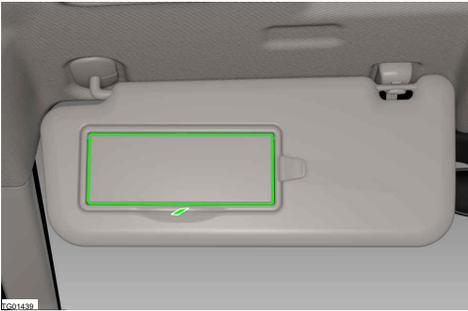
- Swivel the sun visor downwards or upwards to prevent glare from the front.

## Protection from glare at the side



1. Swivel down the sun visor.
  2. Unhook the sun visor from its holder and swivel it sideways to the door window.
  3. Slide it back to the desired position.
- To close the sun visor, proceed in reverse order.

### 3.7.3 Vanity Mirror



There are vanity mirrors with card holders on the upper sides of the sun visors.

The vanity mirror light turns On when the mirror is opened.

The vanity mirror's frame has a holder for e.g. a card or ticket.

#### INFORMATION

- **Do not put several tickets/cards in the card holder at one time. This could cause damage to the card holder.**
- **Do not force vanity mirror cover beyond its end position. This could damage the vanity mirror cover.**

#### ⚠ WARNING

***If the mirror cover of the vanity mirror is opened when the vehicle is in motion, you could be blinded by incident light. There is a risk of an accident. Always keep the mirror cover closed while driving.***

## 4 Driving & Driver Assistance

### 4.1 Starting the Vehicle

#### 4.1.1 General Information on Electric Drive

Driving an electric vehicle is like driving a vehicle with a combustion engine. The vehicle is driven emission-free using its electric drivetrain.

- The special high-voltage battery supplies the electric motors as well as the comfort functions with power.
- The high-voltage battery is charged when parked using a charging cable, for example, or when driving by energy recuperation.
- Charging can be carried out quickly at DC fast charging stations. Also, charging at home with AC wallbox charging unit and AC public charging station outlet is possible.
- While driving, energy recuperation ensures that the energy lost from braking is as little as possible.
- When the vehicle decelerates, the electric motors act as alternators and convert the kinetic energy into electric energy. The electrical energy recharge the high-voltage battery to increase the range and helps to brake the vehicle.
- AWD: Both front and rear axle are powered by separate electric motor. This equipped the vehicle with an electrical all-wheel drive.
- RWD: Only rear axle is powered by an electric motor. This equipped the vehicle with an electrical rear-wheel drive.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

***There is a risk of accident and injury if the driver is under the influence of alcohol and drugs.***

- ***Drinking and driving and/or taking drugs and driving are very dangerous combinations. Even a small amount of alcohol or drugs can affect your reflexes, perceptions, and judgement.***
- ***The possibility of a serious or even fatal accident is greatly increased when you drink or take drugs and drive.***

***When driving using electric power, pedestrians and other road users might not become aware of the vehicle as they normally would due to the lack of engine noise, although the vehicle is equipped with AVAS. There is a risk of an accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the***

***traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.***

#### 4.1.2 Starting the Vehicle with the Start/Stop Button



Starting and driving are possible if the following conditions are met:

- The high-voltage battery is sufficiently charged.
- Charging cable is disconnected. Make sure that the charging cable is removed and the charger cover is closed before starting the vehicle.
- One of the vehicle keys is inside the vehicle.

#### **INFORMATION**

***If the driver door is opened or not closed when the gear selector is shifted in "D" mode, the electric parking brake will be engaged automatically.***

#### **⚠ ATTENTION**

***The gear selector must not be used to switch the driving mode while the "P" mode button is being pressed.***

#### **⚠ ATTENTION**

***Before starting:***

- ***Fasten your seat belt.***
- ***Adjust the seat, steering wheel, and mirrors.***
- ***Make sure that you are able to fully press the brake pedal.***
  1. Fasten your seat belt.
  2. Depress the brake pedal and press the Start/Stop button.  
"READY" icon is displayed on the driver's screen to inform the driver.
  3. Put the gear selector in position D or R.  
The vehicle is now ready to move.

4. Release the brake pedal.

### 4.1.3 Vehicle Modes

The following are the vehicle modes:

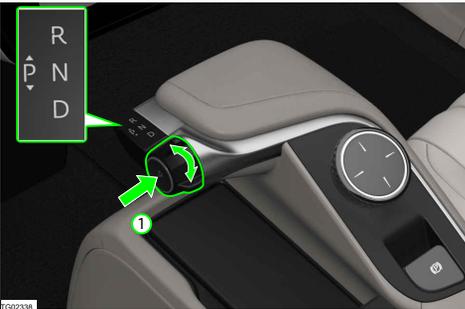
**Standby Mode:** Doors are unlocked when the vehicle is in sleep mode. High-voltage battery is not active but the 12V battery is active.

**Accessory Mode:** When the vehicle is in standby mode, press the Start/Stop switch without pressing the brake pedal or activate the climate control. High-voltage battery is active.

**Ready Mode:** When the vehicle is in standby or accessory mode, press the brake pedal and push Start/Stop switch. The vehicle is ready for driving.

Icon	Description
	Ready to drive
	Accessory mode On
	Standby mode On

### 4.1.4 Drive Positions



Use the gear selector to switch the drive position. The brake pedal must be pressed while engaging the drive position from "P". When the electric vehicle is ready to drive, the drive positions and the engaged gear are displayed.

- Park
- Reverse gear
- Neutral
- Drive

### "D" Drive Position

Engage the gear selector position to "D" for all normal driving. When the brake pedal is released, the vehicle drives off slowly if the creep mode is active.

### "R" Reverse Gear

Only engage the gear selector position to "R" when the vehicle is stationary. If the vehicle speed is more than 0 km/h, it is not possible to select R position.

### "N" Neutral

In the gear selector position "N", the vehicle can be pushed or can roll without drivetrain.

### "P" Park

In the gear selector position P, the drivetrain is blocked and the electric parking brake is engaged. Press the button (1) to select "P" mode.

### ATTENTION

**Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that the gear selector position P and the electric parking brake are engaged. The vehicle could otherwise start to move.**

Electric parking brake can be engaged automatically.

### Driving off

Engage a drive position and step on the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The electric parking brake is automatically released.

### 4.1.5 Creep Mode

The creep function allows the vehicle to drive away automatically from a standstill when the brake pedal is released and the drive position D or R is selected.

Creep mode will not be activated in the following conditions:

- Electric parking brake is engaged
- Driver seat belt is not fastened
- Driver door is open

If the creep mode is not active due to the above conditions, tip the accelerator pedal to initiate creeping when the conditions are satisfied.

If the vehicle is climbing uphill or if there is an obstruction to wheel, the creep mode can be automatically disabled. A warning icon will be displayed on the driver's screen to warn the driver.

### INFORMATION

**The vehicle moves (creeps) when the drive position is engaged. To prevent unintentional creeping, only release the brake when you want to drive away.**

## ATTENTION

If the creep mode is disabled, the vehicle may unintentionally roll backwards (if auto hold is not activated). There is a risk of collision. The driver should always monitor the traffic and road conditions while using the creep mode.

To activate/deactivate the creep mode,

1. Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driving → Driving Support Systems



2. Tap on the creep mode button to activate or deactivate the function.

### Display icon

Icon	Description
	Creep mode disengaged. Obstacle detected on the way.

### 4.1.6 Switching Off the Vehicle

When the vehicle is at a complete stop:

1. Shift the gear selector to the "P" mode. Electric parking brake is engaged automatically.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

## WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users by the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button
- Releasing the electric parking brake
- Opening and closing doors or windows
- Engaging gear selector position N
- Operating vehicle equipments

**There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.**

## INFORMATION

When shutting down the vehicle, electrical system operating noises may be heard, for example if the high-voltage battery is being cooled.

### 4.1.7 Engine Performance Limited

When the vehicle system detects a fault, the engine performance limited mode is automatically activated for the safety of the high-voltage system. The vehicle can still be driven but with limited power. When the fault conditions are healed, the vehicle can be driven normally.

Engine performance can be limited in the following conditions:

- The high-voltage battery is heavily discharged or the voltage is decreasing.
- The temperature of the electric drive unit or the high-voltage battery is too high or too low.
- The electronic stability control system is malfunctioning.
- The brake module is malfunctioning.
- The high-voltage system is malfunctioning.

### Display icons

Icon	Description
	Engine performance limited warning (Icon is steady)
	Engine performance limited error (Icon is steady)

### 4.2 Cruise Control

#### 4.2.1 Overview

The cruise control function allows setting specified speed value depending upon driver selection. The set speed is then maintained by the system. If the driver accelerates the vehicle to overtake, the set speed is not deleted. Once the accelerator pedal is released, the set cruise control speed is resumed.

It is primarily intended for use on long straight roads in steady traffic, such as on highways and other main roads in smoothly flowing traffic.

## ⚠ WARNING

- **There is a risk of an accident by losing vehicle control. The vehicle must always be driven according to current traffic/road conditions. The driver is responsible to take corrective action if cruise control does not maintain a suitable speed.**
- **To reduce the risk of an accident, switch the cruise control Off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, highway exits, or construction zones.**

## 4.2.2 Using Cruise Control

### 4.2.2.1 Overview



1. Cruise control On/Off
2. Cancel cruise control
3. Resume cruise control
4. Set cruise control speed

### 4.2.2.2 Switching cruise control On/Off



- Press the button to turn On/Off the cruise control.

## INFORMATION

**Before cruise control can be activated, the vehicle speed must be at least 20 km/h. This is also the lowest speed that can be set.**

### 4.2.2.3 Activating the cruise control



1. Switch On the cruise control.
2. Accelerate the vehicle to the desired speed.
3. Press the right stalk down to set the cruise speed.

The set cruise speed is displayed on the driver's screen in green and is maintained automatically.

### 4.2.2.4 Changing the cruise control speed



- To increase or decrease the cruise speed, short press the right stalk up or down.  
This changes the speed in 1 km/h increments.

If the right stalk is long pressed up or down, cruise control will accelerate/decelerate the vehicle and set speed will be adjusted to the current vehicle speed when the right stalk is released again.

The new maximum speed is displayed on the driver's screen.

## INFORMATION

**Always observe posted speed limits and current traffic regulations.**

### 4.2.2.5 Resuming set speed



If the cruise control is set at the desired speed and then the brakes are applied or cancel button (1) is pressed, the cruise control is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory.

Once the vehicle speed is above 20 km/h, briefly press the right stalk up (2). The vehicle returns to the previous set speed.

### 4.2.2.6 Cancelling or resuming cruise control



- To cancel the cruise control, press the button (1). When you cancel the cruise control, the cruise speed will be stored.
- To resume stored cruise speed, lift the right stalk up (2).

#### INFORMATION

- **If the vehicle is turned Off or restarted, the stored cruise control speed will be erased.**
- **The cruise control function is interrupted when any of the electronic stability control (ESC) function is in action.**

#### ATTENTION

**Resting your foot on the accelerator pedal could override the cruise control.**

### 4.2.2.7 Display Icons

Icon	Description
	Cruise control active (Icon is steady)
	Cruise control active but overridden (Icon is flashing)
	Cruise control standby (Icon is steady)
	Cruise control failure (Icon is steady)

## 4.3 Braking

### 4.3.1 Overview

The brakes are used to reduce speed or prevent the vehicle from rolling. In addition to the wheel brakes and electric parking brake, the vehicle is also equipped with several brake assist functions.

The vehicle is equipped with an I-Booster instead of a traditional vacuum assisted brake booster. The I-booster doesn't need the vacuum to be functional, the braking force of the brake pedal will be boosted with an electric motor. The I-booster makes it possible to increase the range in an electric vehicle by about 20%.

#### Brake blending

The brake blending function regulates between the braking action of the electric drive motor during energy recovery (energy recuperation) and mechanical braking by the driver. The aim is to ensure that the forces and paths at the brake pedal are always the same, regardless of whether they are decelerated electrically or via the friction brake.

#### Automatic brake prefill (ABP)

Automatic brake prefill is a function which is used to shorten the braking response and decreasing stopping distance by slightly increasing the pressure in the brake system. The function works whenever forward collision alert happens.

## INFORMATION

### Operating noise:

- **Noises may occur when braking depending on the speed, braking force, and outside conditions, such as temperature and humidity.**

## ⚠ ATTENTION

**Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and it is recommended that a Togg authorized service should check them.**

### 4.3.2 Using Brakes

The response time from brakes depends on weather and environmental conditions. To ensure optimal braking effect, brake systems must be cleaned regularly. This can be performed by applying brake for a short period of time while driving.

## ⚠ WARNING

**There is a risk of accident. Only apply the brakes for the purpose of cleaning the brake system when current road and traffic condition allows to perform.**

#### On wet roads

Prolonged driving in heavy rain without braking may cause braking effect to be slightly delayed for the first time when the brakes are applied. This may also occur after washing the vehicle. It will then be necessary to apply greater pressure to the brake pedal. You should therefore maintain a safe distance from the vehicle ahead. Firmly apply the brakes after washing the vehicle or driving on wet roads. This helps warm up the brake discs, enabling them to dry more quickly and protecting them against corrosion. Consider the current traffic situation when braking.

#### On salted roads

While driving on salted roads, a layer of salt may get accumulate on brake disc and brake pads, which could increase the stopping distance.

To reduce the risk of collision and damage to other road user, make sure to apply brakes time to time to remove salt.

#### Aquaplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a water wedge can form between the tires and the road. This phenomenon is known as aquaplaning and can cause the tire to lose contact partially or fully with the road surface,

meaning that the vehicle can neither be steered, nor the brakes be properly applied.

## INFORMATION

**Always maintain extra safety distance from the vehicle ahead while driving on loose gravel, muddy or snow-covered roads.**

### 4.3.3 Brake Maintenance

To keep the vehicle as safe and reliable as possible, follow the service schedule. After replacing brake pads and brake discs, full braking effect is not achieved until the vehicle is driven for few hundred kilometers. Compensate for the reduced braking effect by applying greater pressure to the brake pedal. It is always recommended to use Togg approved parts. Brake pad wear depends largely on the way the vehicle is driven and on operating conditions. Brake pad wear increases when driving frequently in the city or short distances or when using a very sporty driving style.

A warning symbol indicates to the driver to change the brake pads if they are worn.

Icon	Description
	Change brake pads (Icon is steady)

#### Corrosion

Corrosion may form on the brake disc if there is no heavy braking, if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time, or if the vehicle is not driven frequently or for long distances. During braking, corroded brake discs may cause juddering, which usually cannot be eliminated.

### 4.3.4 Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS)

The vehicle is equipped with an anti-lock braking system (ABS), which helps to prevent the wheels from locking and helps to maintain steering control when braking. Vibrations may be felt from the brake pedal when the anti-lock braking system is operating, which is normal.

Icon	Description
	Anti-lock braking system failure (Icon is steady)

### **⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not pump the brake pedal. Doing so may result in increased stopping distances.**
- **You should drive responsibly. The anti-lock braking system do not reduce the risk of accident in case of inappropriate driving speed.**
- **Stopping distance on slippery, gravel or snow cover roads will be greater as compared to normal roads. Always maintain safe distance from the vehicle ahead.**

### **⚠ WARNING**

**If the warning symbols for both brake fault and anti-lock braking system fault are illuminated simultaneously, there may be a fault in the brake system. It is recommended that you visit a Togg authorized service for the inspection.**

### **Cornering stability control (CSC)**

When the vehicle travels at high speeds, every movement of the steering wheel makes a tremendous difference in direction. The cornering stability control function is activated when it senses that the vehicle is taking a turn on a sharp corner. The cornering stability control will regulate the amount of braking force on each wheel and help the vehicle to maintain controlled driving path and keep the vehicle stable.

### **Brake assist system**

The brake assist system helps increase braking force and can thereby reduce the braking distance. The brake assist system monitors the vehicle speed and the force with which the driver presses the brake pedal to determine if an emergency braking is intended. In this case, even if the driver does not press the brake pedal sufficiently, a full braking force is applied automatically by the system. The advantages offered by the anti-lock braking system are utilized in this case.

### **Electronic brake proportioning**

Electronic brake force distribution (EBD) changes the brake force for each wheel to stabilize the vehicle during braking. It stabilizes the vehicle especially when braking in curves and prevents oversteer.

### **4.3.5 Electronic Stability Control (ESC)**

Electronic stability control helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing drive power and by brake intervention on individual wheels.

### **⚠ WARNING**

- **Always drive carefully and attentively.**

- **Never solely rely on the hill start assist system to prevent the vehicle from moving backward on a hill.**

### **⚠ ATTENTION**

**Be careful while stopping on frozen or muddy roads.**

### **Torque request**

The ESC (electronic stability control) has to work together with the powertrain to request a torque reduction in the event that regenerative braking contributes to make the vehicle unstable. In this event, electronic stability control can increase or decrease the torque to stabilize the vehicle.

### **Automatic traction control**

The automatic traction control reduces the drive output if wheel spin occurs and adapts the output to suit road surface conditions. The automatic traction control makes it easier to pull away, accelerate and drive uphill.

### **Hill start assist/Auto hold**

The hill start assist function automatically keeps the brake applied to help prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards when the driver releases the brake pedal and apply the accelerator when the vehicle is stopped on a hill. The function retains pressure from the brake pedal in the brake system for several seconds after the brake pedal has been released.

### **⚠ ATTENTION**

- **If you do not begin driving immediately after releasing the brake pedal, your vehicle may begin to roll backward. There is a risk of an accident by losing vehicle control.**
- **The hill start assist cannot hold the vehicle on inclines in every scenario (e.g. on slippery or icy ground). Be ready to always apply the brakes when using the hill start assist.**

### **Hill descent control**

Hill descent control can assist you when driving down hills by maintaining a constant vehicle speed by automatically braking four wheels and keep vehicle steerable. You can adjust the speed using the accelerator and brake pedals. The regulation depends on the hill and the vehicle speed.

### **Roll over mitigation**

The system helps to prevent rollovers by detecting vehicle's roll motion, and individually applying the brakes to one or more wheels.

## Activating and deactivating electronic stability control functions

The electronic stability control functions can be activated or deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driving → Driving Support Systems**

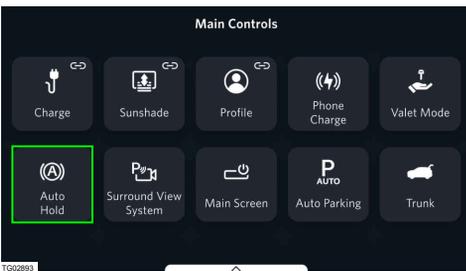


- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the auto vehicle hold.
- Tap on the button (2) to activate/deactivate the hill descent control.

Additionally, the auto hold function can also be activated or deactivated using the below option.

Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls**



- Tap on the auto hold button to activate/deactivate the auto vehicle hold.

## Display icons

Icon	Description
	Electronic stability control malfunction (Icon is steady)

Icon	Description
	Electronic stability control in control (Icon is flashing)
	Auto hold active (Icon is steady)
	Auto hold failure (Icon is steady)
	Hill descent control active (Icon is flashing)
	Hill descent control enabled (Icon is steady)
	Hill descent control failure (Icon is steady)

## 4.3.6 Electric Parking Brake

The electric parking brake (EPB) is used to secure the vehicle against unintentional rolling when it is parked. Electric parking brake indicator lights up on the driver's screen.

### WARNING

- Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves and other road users. There is a risk of injury or even death.**
- When leaving the parked vehicle, take the key with you and lock the vehicle.**

### INFORMATION

**When the electric parking brake is being applied or released, a faint sound can be heard from the brake's electric motor.**

## Activating the electric parking brake



1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Lift up the electric parking brake switch.

### Releasing the electric parking brake manually

1. Turn On the vehicle.
2. Press the brake pedal.
3. Press on the electric parking brake switch.

### Roll away protection

The electric parking brake function activates the electric parking brake if the vehicle stops and door is opened or engine is stopped, to prevent vehicle from rolling away. Electric parking brake indicator lights up on the driver's screen.

### Auto drive

The system releases the electric parking brake when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal while the seat belt is fastened, without manually releasing the electric parking brake.

### Electric parking brake malfunction

If the electric parking brake has failed or malfunctioned, secure the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away before leaving the vehicle.

### Display icons

Icon	Description
	Electric parking brake failure (Icon is flashing)
	Electric parking brake engaged or Electronic brake force distribution warning (Icon is steady)
	Intelligent brake booster service warning or regenerative brake control service warning (Icon is steady)

## 4.3.7 Multi-Collision Brake

The multi-collision brake automatically controls the brake in an incident where the airbag deploys to reduce the risk of further accidents. In case of a primary collision with or without airbag deployment, the braking system is notified to decelerate the vehicle and bring the vehicle to a standstill.

## 4.4 Parking and Maneuvering

### 4.4.1 Safety Instructions

#### WARNING

- **There is a risk of an accident or injury from an insufficiently secured vehicle. Always make sure the vehicle is secured when parking on uphill or downhill grades. Turn the front wheels towards the curb to prevent rolling if the vehicle starts moving.**
- **If a person stays in the vehicle for extended periods and is exposed to very high temperatures, there is a risk of injury or risk to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it.**
- **Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident or injury if the children set the vehicle in motion by releasing the electric parking brake or operating the vehicle equipment.**
- **There is a risk of injury or accident when using park assist and approaching at high speeds. Warning can occur late due to system limits. Avoid maneuvering the vehicle at high speeds when using the park assist.**

### 4.4.2 Parking the Vehicle

Follow the below procedure when parking the vehicle:

1. Apply the brake to bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Apply the electric parking brake and shift the gear selector to the "P" mode.
3. Turn Off the vehicle by pressing Start/Stop button.
4. Get out of the vehicle and lock the vehicle.

## 4.4.3 Park Assist

### 4.4.3.1 Overview

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**The park assist system is only to assist you in parking and maneuvering the vehicle. Due to system limits, it may not respond in all situations. It is not a substitute for your attention to the surroundings and does not relieve you of your responsibility pertaining to road traffic law.**

The park assist system is an electronic parking aid that will assist you to park your vehicle safely when maneuvering in tight parking spaces. It provides audio and visual information on the main screen and driver's screen.

The color of the segments on the display changes depending on the distance to the detected obstacle:

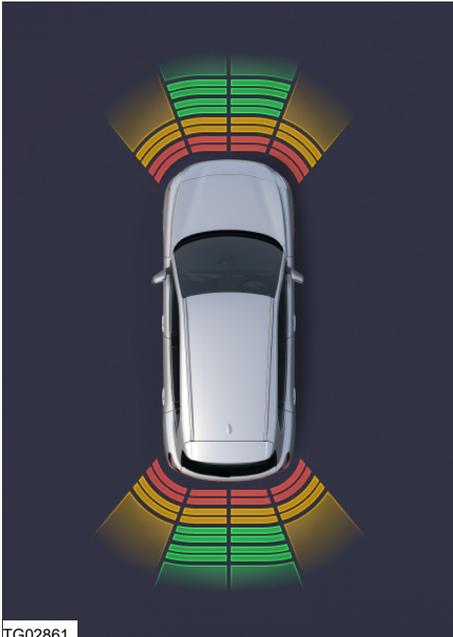
Green : > 0.6 m

Yellow : approx. 0.6 m - 0.3 m

Red : < 0.3 m

The closer your vehicle comes to the obstacle, the closer the segments will move to the vehicle.

### 4.4.3.2 Front/Rear park assist



When the front assist function is activated and vehicle speed is below 15 km/h, the ultrasonic sensors will detect the proximity of an obstacle from the front or rear bumper and this information is displayed on the main screen and driver's screen.

The top view of the vehicle with respect to the detected object is displayed on the main screen and driver's screen. The segments change the color as the distance between the object and the vehicle is changed.

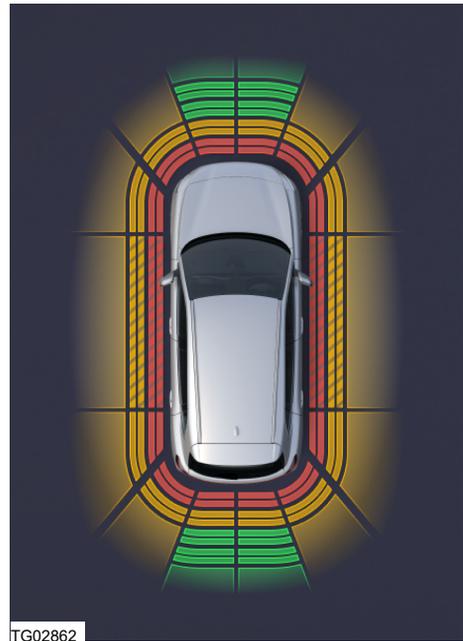
The detection range of the system is approximately 150 cm for rear and 120 cm for front, depending on the surrounding. A continuous acoustic warning will be provided when the object is detected approximately 30 cm from the vehicle and collision is imminent.

The front park assist function can be activated and deactivated using the control display.

The function works with the help of:

- Front ultrasonic sensors
- Rear ultrasonic sensors

### 4.4.3.3 Side park assist (if equipped)



The side park assist function warns you of any obstacles detected to the side. The obstacles must be detected in advance by the front or rear ultrasonic

sensors while driving by them. If the vehicle is steered in the direction of a detected obstacle and a lateral collision is imminent, an audio and visual warning is issued.

To display the obstacles on all sides, the vehicle must travel a distance of one vehicle length. The detection range of the system is approximately 60 cm from the sides, depending on the surrounding.

The side park assist function can be activated and deactivated using the control display.

The function works with the help of:

- Front ultrasonic sensors
- Rear ultrasonic sensors
- Side ultrasonic sensors

#### 4.4.3.4 Park assist icons

Icon	Description
	Side park assist
	Park in
	Park out right
	Park out left
	Park assist view

#### 4.4.3.5 Activating/Deactivating the park assist

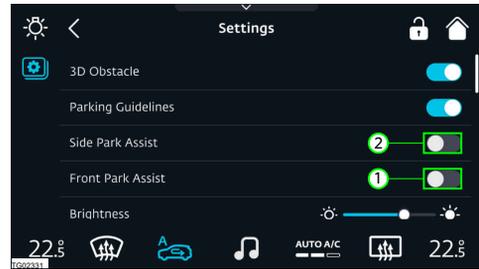
The park assist function is automatically activated when

- The vehicle is turned On.
- The gear selector is shifted to "R" mode.
- The vehicle speed is below 15 km/h and an approaching object is detected.

The manual activation/deactivation of the park assist function can be controlled using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Surround View System → Settings**



- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the front park assist function.

#### INFORMATION

**Front park assist is always re-activated automatically when the gear selector is shifted to "R" mode.**

- Tap on the button (2) to activate/deactivate the side park assist function.

#### 4.4.3.6 Park assist limitations

Due to system limits, the park assist function may not work in the following situations:

- When the objects are at a higher level, for example, protruding ramps.
- In case of small and low objects, such as boxes.
- When the ultrasonic sensors are covered with stickers or foils.
- If the sensors are misaligned, damaged, incorrectly installed or painted after repair work.
- In weather conditions such as snow, strong wind and extreme heat or cold.
- In case of moving, thin or sharp objects.
- When external ultrasonic sounds interfere, for example, loud machines or passing vehicles.
- In case of dirty sensors.
- In case of objects with porous surfaces.
- In case of small children and animals.

#### Side park assist limitation

For the side of the vehicle, the system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them when the vehicle speed is less than 9 km/h.

#### 4.4.3.7 Malfunction in ultrasonic park assist

Message on driver's screen	Description
Ultrasonic park assist failure detected	Park assist malfunction

Ultrasonic parking failure message will be displayed on the driver's screen. It is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service to have the system checked and corrected.

#### 4.4.4 Auto Parking (if equipped)

##### 4.4.4.1 Overview

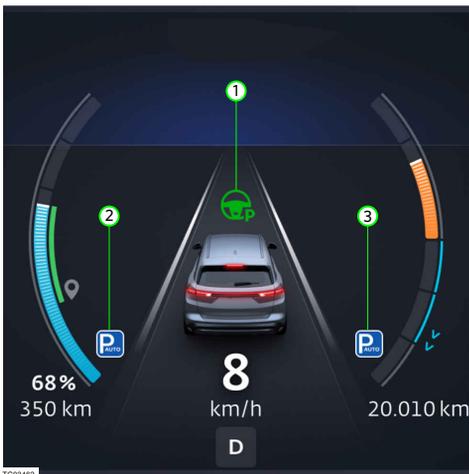
### ⚠ WARNING

**The auto park function is only to assist you in parking and maneuvering the vehicle. Due to system limits, it may not respond in all the situations. It is not a substitute for your attention to the surroundings and does not relieve you of your responsibility pertaining to road traffic law.**

The auto parking function assists the driver to park in and park out of the parking spaces. The ultrasonic sensors monitor and detect the parking space. The steering and braking actions of the vehicle are controlled by the system to maneuver the vehicle into and out of the parking space.

Information about the actions required by the driver is provided on the driver's screen, control display, and main screen in the form of symbols, images, and text.

#### Driver screen display



1. Auto parking is in progress.

2. A parking slot is available on the left side.
3. A parking slot is available on the right side.

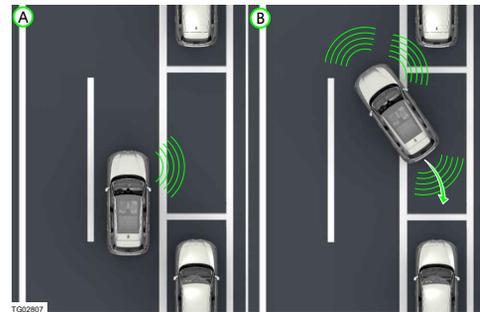
When the park assist function is activated by the driver, it starts to search for a parking slot. The slot search is activated when 'Auto Parking' is selected from the 'Main Controls' screen on the control display. After selecting the parking slot, the auto parking maneuver starts. (Refer to [4.4.4.2 Parking in the vehicle \(Park In\)](#) )

#### Display icons

Icon	Description
	Parking slot found indication
	Auto parking is in progress

#### The following are the available park in methods:

1. Parallel parking



2. Perpendicular parking

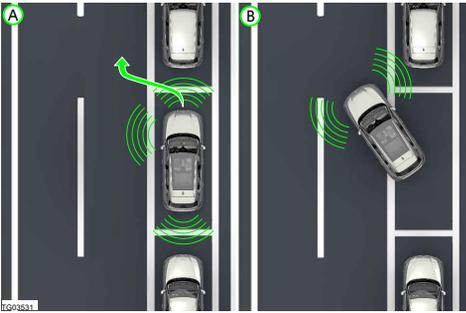


Following steps are involved in the auto park in:

1. Searching parking space (A)
2. Activating the function
3. Parking the vehicle (B)

## The following is the available park out method:

Parallel park out



Following steps are involved in auto park out:

1. Activating the function
2. Selecting the park out direction (A)
3. Leaving the parking space (B)

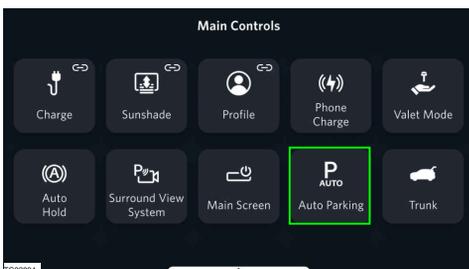
### 4.4.4.2 Parking in the vehicle (Park In)

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls**

or

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Surround View System → Auto Parking**

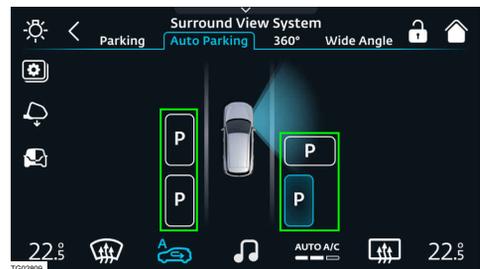


Press the auto parking button.

The auto parking overlay appears on the main screen, and the system starts to search for parking slots.



2. Drive the vehicle parallel to and less than 1 m away from the other parked vehicles when searching for the parking space. If any slot is found, it is indicated on the driver's screen with the parking slot found indication. The possible parking slots will also be displayed on the control display.
3. Stop the vehicle and select the desired parking slot while pressing the brake pedal and follow the instructions on the main screen and allow the vehicle to park in automatically.



4. The auto park in completion is indicated on the main screen. If required, adjust the parking position and select the shift lever to "P" mode.

### INFORMATION

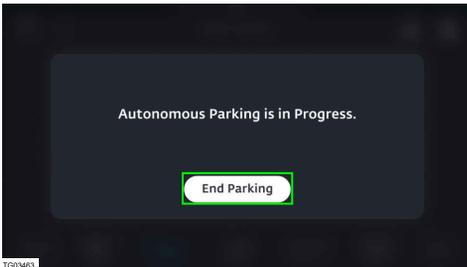
**The hazard warning light is switched On automatically when the auto park in procedure begins.**

### WARNING

**The automatic parking slot search function searches for objects around and detects empty slots in between those objects. Due to this principle, sometimes misleading parking slot found indications may occur. The parking slot found notifications should only be considered when parking slot is being searched and there are real parking slots around.**

#### 4.4.4.3 Ending the auto park in

When the auto park in is in progress the below screen is displayed on the control display.



- Tap on the end parking button to end the auto park in maneuver manually.

#### 4.4.4.4 Leaving the parking space (Park Out)

##### WARNING

**The auto park out function is to only assist you while leaving the parallel parking spaces when the distance to other parked vehicles is tight. Due to system limits, it cannot respond in all situations. It is not a substitute for your attention to your surroundings and does not relieve you of your responsibility pertaining to road traffic laws. The driver is solely responsible for taking care of oncoming traffic in all directions when the vehicle automatically parks out.**

##### INFORMATION

**The auto park out function should only be used to park out the vehicle from parallel parking spaces.**

The auto park out function assists the driver to exit the parking space when the vehicle is parked parallel.

##### Requirements:

- The vehicle is recently turned On, i.e., the Start/ Stop button is turned On, and the vehicle's state is transitioned to "Ready".
- The vehicle is stationary, the electric parking brake is engaged, and the gear state is "P" or "N".
- There is an object detected at the front of the vehicle at a distance of less than 120 cm.
- There is no object detected at the side of the vehicle e.g. a wall or car.

The auto park out function and the "Park Out Left" and "Park Out Right" buttons are enabled only if the above conditions are satisfied.

##### INFORMATION

- **The gear selector must be in "N" mode and the electric parking brake must be released before starting the auto park out operation.**
- **If the vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h, the park out function is disabled. Restart the vehicle to enable the park-out function.**

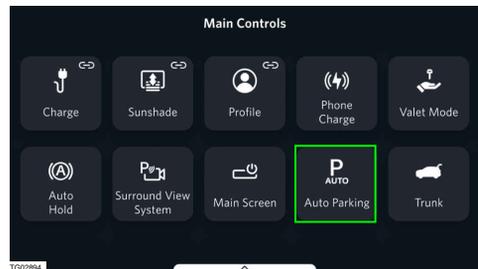
Follow the below instructions to auto park out:

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls → Auto Parking**

Or

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Surround View System → Auto Parking**



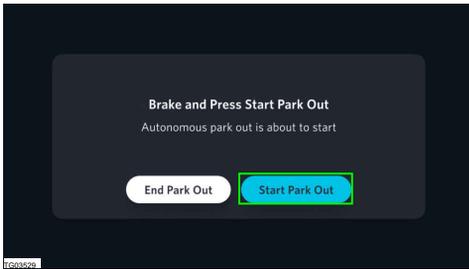
Press the auto parking button.

The auto parking overlay appears on the control display, and the system displays possible parking out options.



2. Select the desired parking out direction.
3. Press the start park out button while pressing the brake pedal.

- When the park out operation starts, release the brake pedal and allow the vehicle to automatically park out.



- The auto park out completion is indicated on the main screen.

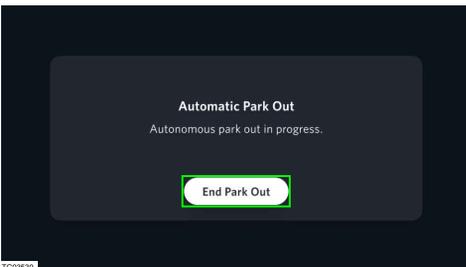
At the end of operation, the vehicle gear state "P" is selected and electric parking brake is engaged for safety. The driver shall take the control, shift the gear selector to "D" and continue driving.

#### INFORMATION

**The hazard warning light is switched On automatically when the auto park out procedure begins.**

#### 4.4.4.5 Ending the auto park out

When the auto park out is in progress below screen is displayed on the control display.



- Tap on the end park out button to end the auto park out maneuver manually.

#### 4.4.4.6 Cancelling the auto parking

The auto parking will be cancelled if:

- The vehicle is steered manually.
- The driver seat belt is unfastened.
- Any object is detected in the parking space, which makes parking maneuver impossible.
- You exit the auto parking function on the main screen.

The auto parking will be suspended in the following situations and the driver needs to press the auto parking button on the main screen to continue after the suspend condition is cleared:

- If the door is opened.
- If the gear selector is handled by the driver.
- If the accelerator pedal is pressed by the driver.
- If the electric parking brake is applied.

The auto parking will be suspended in the following situation and will continue automatically after the suspend condition is cleared:

- If the brake pedal is pressed.

#### 4.4.4.7 Auto parking limitations

Auto parking does not work:

- On sharp bends
- If any of the ultrasonic sensors is not working
- On uneven roads or slippery surfaces
- On roads where slope is greater than 15°

#### 4.4.4.8 Malfunction in auto parking

Message on driver's screen	Description
Auto park assist failure detected	Park assist malfunction

Auto parking failure message will be displayed on the driver's screen. It is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service to have the system checked and corrected.

#### 4.4.5 Surround View (if equipped)

##### 4.4.5.1 Overview

#### ⚠ WARNING

- The driver is always responsible for monitoring the area around the vehicle. The surround view feature is only to assist the driver and it does not relieve the driver from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly.**
- Make sure there are no children or animals in the surrounding area of the vehicle when maneuvering and parking the vehicle. There is a risk of accident or injury in case of distraction.**
- The cameras must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., ice, frost, snow, leaves, mud, or insects. Failure to keep the camera clean may result in miscalculations or false indications, which can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

The surround view feature provides a bird's eye view of the vehicle. It helps when parking or maneuvering the vehicle by displaying different camera perspectives on the main screen.

Cross-traffic Warning: depending on the vehicle configuration, a warning on the main screen is also shown for vehicles that are approaching at the sides from the rear.

For vehicles that are approaching at the sides from the front it is shown on the driver's screen. For more information. (Refer to [4.8.4.2 Front Cross Traffic Alert \(if equipped\)](#) )

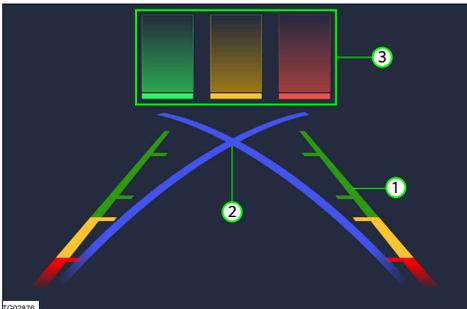
The surround view feature works by evaluating the images from the following cameras:

- Front surround view camera
- Rearview camera
- Surround view camera on the mirrors

For more information (Refer to [6.10.1 External Cameras](#) ).

#### 4.4.5.2 Parking guidelines

Parking guidelines display's the anticipated vehicle trajectory and detected obstacles based on the current vehicle position. It assists while parking and maneuvering the vehicle in tight parking spaces on level roads.



1. Fixed lines
2. Turning lines
3. 3D obstacles

The fixed lines help you to estimate the distance to an obstacle while driving the vehicle in the reverse direction. Obstacles in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and obstacles in the green zone are farther away. Obstacles get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones.

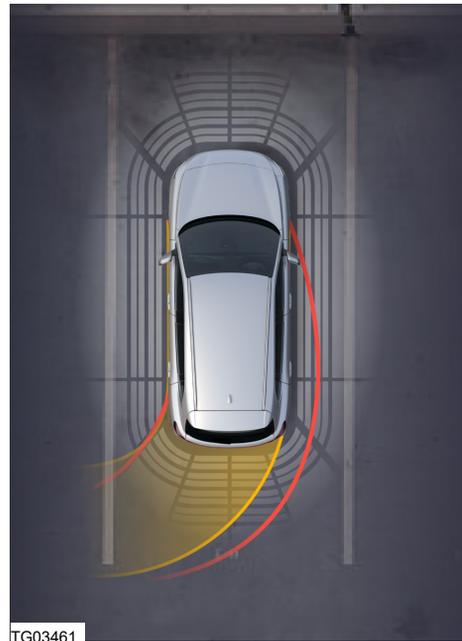
The turning lines display the course of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road. Turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path, the guidelines are continuously adapted depending on the steering wheel angle.

The 3D obstacle markings highlight the obstacles around the vehicle detected by the ultrasonic sensors by superimposing the 3D obstacle markings on the camera image. Depending upon the distance between the obstacle and your vehicle, the 3D obstacle markings are highlighted through green, yellow, and to red coloring.

#### Trajectory lines

##### **⚠ ATTENTION**

***Please note that the trajectory lines display the shortest path. Be sure that the vehicle's sides do not come into contact with or scrape against any obstacle/obstruction when the steering wheel is turned while driving forward or that the front of the vehicle does not come into contact with or scrape against any obstacle/obstruction when backing up.***



Trajectory lines are displayed behind, in front of or to the sides of the vehicle depending upon the direction of travel. It assists while taking turn or parking the vehicle in tight parking space.

The trajectory lines will only be shown when the top view is active on main screen.

#### 4.4.5.3 Surround view system icons

Icon	Description
	Surround view
	Parking view
	Camera view. Use to select an alternative camera view in 360° mode.
	360° view
	Auto parking view
	Wide angle view
	Front down view
	Rear down view
	Front view
	Rear view
	Left side view
	Right side view
	Front tire view

	Rear tire view
	Jelly view
	Mirror adjustment down. Adjusts mirror to display the kerb or other objects near the ground.
	Close. Deactivate park assist for the current parking maneuver.
	Moving obstacle warning
	Cross traffic alert right
	Cross traffic alert left

#### 4.4.5.4 Activating and deactivating the surround view system

- **Automatic**

##### Activating

Shift the gear selector to the R position when the vehicle is ready to drive.

##### Deactivating

When the vehicle is driven in the forward direction, the surround view camera will deactivate automatically as the vehicle speed reaches 20 km/h.

Also, the surround view camera will automatically deactivate after 10 seconds of shifting the gear selector to the P position.

- **Manual**

Surround view camera can be activated or deactivated manually using the control display when the vehicle mode is accessory or ready.

Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls → Surround View System**

Or

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle  
→ Surround View System**

1. Select the desired view on the control display or main screen.  
The icon for the active view is highlighted.
2. To deactivate, tap on the close camera view button on the control display or close button on the main screen.

▪ **Temporary disable**

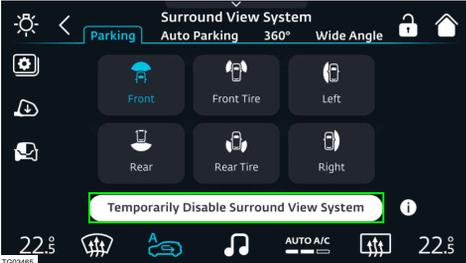
When the ultrasonic sensors detect any object, the surround view system is activated to alert the driver. This function can be temporarily disabled using the control display to avoid driver distraction while driving.

Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls → Surround View System → Parking**

Or

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle  
→ Surround View System → Parking**

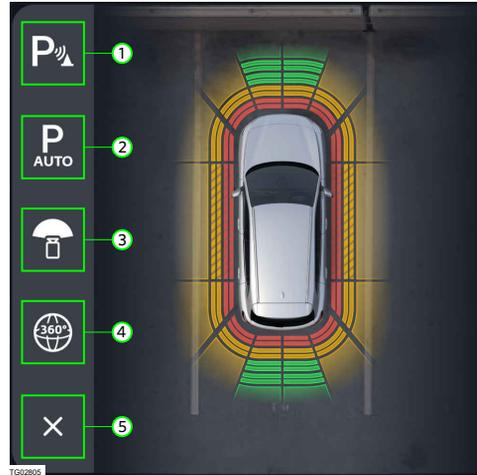


- Tap on the temporarily disable surround view system button to disable the activation of the surround view system temporarily.

**4.4.5.5 Camera views**

Different camera views can be selected based on the requirement using the control display and main screen. The icon for the active view is highlighted.

When the parking view is active, the below view is displayed on the main screen.



1. Parking View
2. Auto Parking View
3. Wide Angle View
4. 360° View
5. Close Surround View

▪ **Parking View**

The parking view displays an image of the vehicle surrounding with the parking guidelines on the main screen. The view is displayed by using the information collected by the ultrasonic sensors and surround view cameras.

Four cameras capture the area around the vehicle, and it is displayed in various selectable views.

Depending on the user's requirements, alternative camera views can be manually selected using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls → Surround View System → Parking**

Or

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle  
→ Surround View System → Parking**

The following views can be selected:

- Front view
- Rear view
- Left side view

- Right side view
- Front tire view
- Rear tire view

Depending on the view, the vehicle surrounding or a partial area will be displayed. If the parking guidelines are active, the selected side will be displayed with guidelines to assist the driver.

#### ▪ Auto Parking View

Auto parking view can be activated using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls → Surround View System → Parking**

Or

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Surround View System → Auto Parking**

For details, Refer to [4.4.4 Auto Parking \(if equipped\)](#).

#### ▪ Wide Angle View

Road users hidden by obstacles at the side may not be seen from the driver's seat until very late. The front view camera and the rearview camera capture the area around the side of the vehicle to improve the view.

Wide angle view can be activated using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls → Surround View System → Wide Angle**

Or

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Surround View System → Wide Angle**

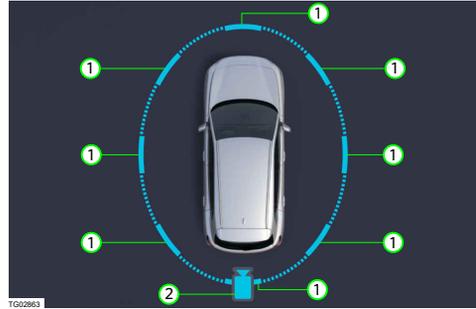
The following views can be selected on the control display when the wide angle view is activated:

- Front Wide View
- Rear Wide View
- Rear Down View
- Front Down View

The rear down view assists the driver when hitching the trailer by displaying rear view from top with the guidelines.

The front down view assists when entering a car wash by displaying the floor and vehicle travel path.

#### ▪ 360° View



The 360° view displays the vehicle surrounding along the front, rear, and sides of the vehicle, when active. Different views of the vehicle can be displayed by touching at different camera angles (1). The camera view icon (2) is displayed on the selected view and an image is displayed on the main screen.

Alternatively, swipe on the main screen left or right to change the camera view.

360° view can be activated/deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls → Surround View System → 360°**

Or

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Surround View System → 360°**

- To exit the 360° view function, select another camera function or tap on the close camera view button on the control display or close button on the main screen.

#### Changing camera view with steering wheel switches:

When the 360° view is activated, below information appears in the left and right tiles on the driver's screen.



- Change the camera views of the vehicle using the left or right steering wheel switch.

#### ▪ Jelly View

When the jelly view is activated, a transparent vehicle image is displayed on the main screen.

Jelly view can be activated/deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls → Surround View System**

Or

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Surround View System**

- Tap on the jelly view button to activate/deactivate the jelly view.

#### 4.4.5.6 Surround view system limits

The surround view system will not function properly or function partially in the following cases:

- The tailgate is open
- Any of the door is open
- An outside mirror is not completely folded out
- The camera lens is obstructed or dirty
- If the camera or component where camera is installed are damaged
- Poor light condition
- Poor visibility e.g., fog, rain or snow

#### 4.4.6 Rearview Camera

The rearview camera provides a view of the area behind the vehicle on the main screen. The feature helps to maneuver the vehicle while parking in reverse.

The rearview camera can be used when the vehicle is in a ready to drive state.

#### Activating and deactivating the rearview camera

- **Automatic**

#### Activating

Shift the gear selector to the R position when the vehicle is ready to drive.

#### Deactivating

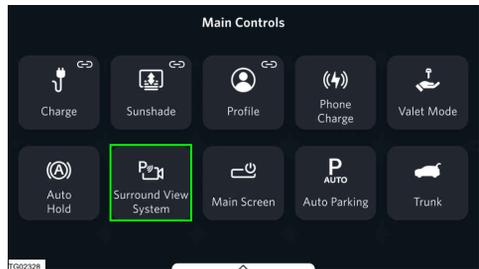
When the vehicle is driven in the forward direction, the rearview camera will deactivate automatically as the vehicle speed reaches 20 km/h or after 10 seconds.

- **Manual**

Rearview camera can be activated or deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls**



- Tap on the surround view system button to activate/deactivate the rearview camera.

#### 4.4.7 Rearview Camera Cleaning

The rearview camera cleaning feature is available with the models equipped with the surround view function.

When the feature is activated, the washer nozzle sprays the washer fluid on the rearview camera for cleaning.



- To activate the feature, press the rear wiper washer button for 3 seconds.

## 4.5 Drive Mode

### 4.5.1 Overview

The vehicle offers different driving modes. The driver has the option to choose the mode to get optimum vehicle performance in different driving conditions. Depending on the drive mode that you select, the system adjusts various vehicle settings, for example steering, driver's screen graphics, ambient lighting, interior sound, handling and powertrain response.

### 4.5.2 Drive Mode Controls

The drive modes can be controlled with the gear shifting unit (GSU) or the control display.

"Comfort" is the default driving mode. The driver will select the desired modes as per driving feasibility.

To select the desired drive mode using the control display,

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driving → Drive Mode**



To select the desired drive mode using the Gear Shift Unit (GSU),

1. Press the left (2) and right (1) buttons for 3 seconds at the same time. The drive mode selection menu will appear on the control display.

#### INFORMATION

**When the gear shift unit buttons are released, the drive mode selection menu will appear on the control display for at least 5 seconds.**



2. Select the desired drive mode using the control display or GSU buttons (1) or (2).

### 4.5.3 Eco

The eco mode helps reduce power consumption by slowing down the accelerator pedal response compared to the same accelerator pedal position in other modes. It can be used to achieve maximum driving range.

### 4.5.4 Comfort

Comfort driving profile corresponds to default setting of the vehicle systems. It leads to comfort-oriented vehicle setup. It is suitable for everyday use, poor roads or long motorway journeys.

### 4.5.5 Sport

This mode provides sporty driving with improved performance, handling and response. This mode increases acceleration response. The sport mode makes your vehicle accelerate faster and provides sportier steering feel.

### 4.5.6 Terrain Mode (if equipped)

The terrain mode provides improved traction and stability when driving on terrains like mud, sand, and snow. The system automatically optimizes the traction control characteristics. It enables optimum control of the vehicle on any terrain.

There are three terrain modes:

- Mud
- Sand
- Snow

#### INFORMATION

- **The terrain mode selection menu is only enabled when the drive mode is selected as comfort.**

- **The terrain mode feature applies to vehicles with AWD.**

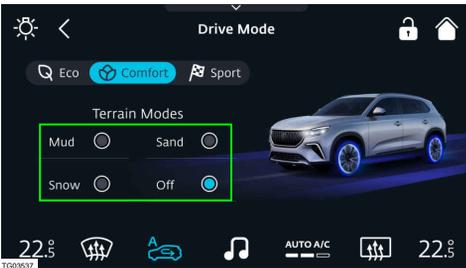
The default state of the terrain mode is Off.

The selection of terrain mode is temporary for one driving cycle, select the desired terrain mode again when starting the new journey.

Terrain mode can be selected using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driving → Drive Mode**



- Tap on the button to select the desired terrain mode.

The selected terrain mode status is displayed on the driver's screen.

#### 4.5.7 Tips for Increasing Economy

- Keep tires inflated to the correct pressure.
- Keep wheels in correct alignment.
- Remove unnecessary cargo from the vehicle.
- Drive at a constant speed. Maintain cruising speeds with a constant accelerator position or by using cruise control when appropriate.
- Accelerate slowly and smoothly. Gently press and release the accelerator pedal for acceleration and deceleration.
- Turn Off the air conditioner/heater when it is not necessary.
- Release accelerator pedal to slow down and do not apply the brakes when traffic and road conditions allow. The vehicle is equipped with regenerative braking, it helps recharging the high-voltage battery.

## 4.6 One Pedal Drive with Hold (if equipped)

### 4.6.1 Overview

The one pedal drive with hold function aims to bring the vehicle to a complete stop comfortably without using the brake pedal. The feature allows the driver to drive the vehicle using the accelerator pedal only. It relies on the regenerative braking to slow down the vehicle once the accelerator pedal is released. When the vehicle speed is below 5 km/h, the function helps to bring the vehicle to a complete stop.

The vehicle's speed depends on the position of the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is depressed, the vehicle continues to drive at a constant speed. As the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle slows down and comes to a complete stop, depending on the level of recuperation. (Refer to [4.7.3 Levels of Recuperation](#) )

The one pedal drive with hold function operates only when the driver seat belt is fastened.

#### **WARNING**

**The one pedal drive with hold feature does not relieve the driver from judging the braking distance. There is a risk of collision, make sure to press the brake pedal when necessary.**

### 4.6.2 Activating/Deactivating the One Pedal Drive with Hold

The one pedal drive with hold can be activated or deactivated using the control display or the gear shifting unit (GSU).

#### **Using the control display:**

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driving → Driving Support Systems**



- Tap on the one pedal drive with hold button to activate or deactivate the one pedal drive with hold function.

**Using the gear shifting unit (GSU):**



- Press the button for at least 2 seconds to activate the one pedal drive with hold function if it is inactive.
- Press the button for at least 2 seconds to deactivate the one pedal drive with hold function if it is already active.

The activation or deactivation of the one pedal drive with hold will be permanent unless the setting is changed.

The activation and in action status of the one pedal drive with hold function is displayed on the driver’s screen.

**INFORMATION**

***The one pedal drive with hold and hill descent control functions cannot operate at the same time. If one function is activated, the system will automatically deactivate the other if already active.***

**INFORMATION**

***The one pedal drive with hold function can be used with any recuperation level. To ensure a shorter stopping distance, it is suggested to select the recuperation level as medium or high. (Refer to [4.7.3 Levels of Recuperation](#) )***

**Re-engaging the one pedal drive with hold**

- When the creep mode is active:  
When the creep mode is activated, the vehicle will try to maintain the creep speed unless the accelerator pedal is pressed. (Refer to [4.1.5 Creep Mode](#) )

To re-engage the one pedal drive with hold, if already activated, accelerate the vehicle above 7 km/h.

- After coming to a complete stop:  
To re-engage the one pedal drive with hold, accelerate the vehicle to at least 2 km/h.

**Display icons**

Icon	Description
	One pedal drive with hold active (Icon is steady)
	One pedal drive with hold is braking the vehicle (Icon is steady)

**INFORMATION**

***When the vehicle starts moving after a complete stop (after a successful one pedal drive cycle), the display icon color changes from "Green" to "White".***

**4.6.3 Limitations of One Pedal Drive with Hold**

One pedal drive with hold function is limited when

- The slope is too steep
- The recuperation is limited e.g., due to high-voltage battery state of charge is high
- There is a malfunction in the brake module

When vehicle stability functions like anti-lock braking system or electronic stability control are in action, the one pedal drive with hold feature will be temporarily unavailable.

**4.7 Energy Recuperation**

**4.7.1 Safety Instructions**

**⚠ WARNING**

- ***Do not solely depend upon recuperation to brake the vehicle to stand still in traffic situations. If required, apply extra pressure on the brake pedal.***
- ***Always be ready to brake and stay a safe distance away from the vehicle in front.***

**⚠ ATTENTION**

***The recuperation can be limited depending on the high-voltage battery state of charge and environment temperature. The hydraulic brake effect will increase if the state of charge is at a higher level***

and the braking effect due to recuperation will be lesser.

- **It is advised not to fully charge the high-voltage battery at high elevations, e.g., at the top of a pass, to facilitate a braking effect by means of recuperation when descending.**
- **Reduce your speed before driving down a long, steep gradient.**
- **When driving down a long, steep gradient, slow down the vehicle using the vehicle brake.**

#### 4.7.2 Recuperation

The vehicle recovers the energy by using the recuperation function. The electrical drive unit operates like a generator and converts a large portion of kinetic energy into electrical energy that is stored in the high-voltage battery when braking the vehicle.

The braking effect generated by low level recuperation is similar to the engine braking effect on a vehicle with an internal combustion engine. Recuperation level medium and high generates a more aggressive braking effect than vehicles with an internal combustion engine.

The function works automatically when you release the accelerator pedal or when you press the brake pedal while driving with the gear selector in the "D" or "R" mode.

#### 4.7.3 Levels of Recuperation

##### 1. Off

No recuperation will be applied and the vehicle will free roll when the accelerator pedal is released.

##### 2. Low

The rate of energy recovery is low and the vehicle decelerates less powerfully.

##### 3. Medium

The rate of energy recovery is medium and the vehicle will slow down moderately.

##### 4. High

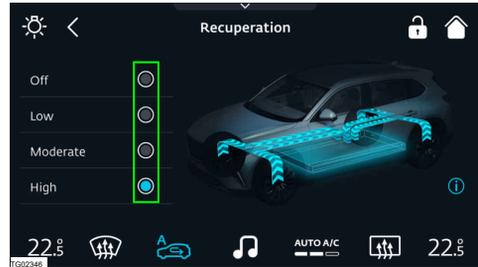
High amount of energy is recovered and the vehicle decelerates powerfully.

#### 4.7.4 Adjusting Recuperation Level

The level of recuperation can be adjusted using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driving → Recuperation**



- Tap to select the desired level of recuperation or deactivate the recuperation function.

Or

- Select the desired level of recuperation or deactivate the recuperation function using the gear shift unit buttons (1) or (2).



#### 4.8 Advanced Driver Assistance System (ADAS) (if equipped)

##### 4.8.1 Driver Attention Assist

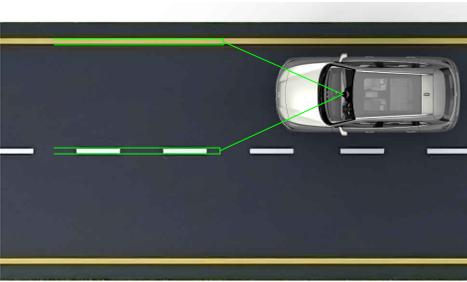
##### 4.8.1.1 Safety Instructions

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- **Driver is always responsible for using the vehicle in accordance with traffic rules. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.**
- **The system may not operate properly if the front smart camera is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.**

- **Alert from driver attention assist should be taken very seriously since a sleepy driver is often not aware of his/her own condition. Stop the vehicle safely as soon as possible and rest.**
- **Unsteady driver warning is not intended to extend the duration of driving. Always plan breaks at regular intervals to help remain alert.**
- **In certain cases, fatigue may not affect the driver's behavior. In situations of this type, no warning will be provided. Therefore, it is important to take breaks at regular intervals, regardless of whether or not unsteady driver warning has given a warning.**

#### 4.8.1.2 Unsteady Driver Warning



T002503

Unsteady driver warning is intended to alert the driver if his/her driving becomes erratic due to e.g., distraction or fatigue.

Unsteady driver warning is designed to help detect a slowly changing driving pattern. It is primarily intended to be used on main roads and is not meant for use in city traffic.

The function activates initially when the vehicle's speed first exceeds 70 km/h and remains active as long the speed remains above approx. 65 km/h.

Front smart camera monitors the lane side marker lines and compares the direction of the road with the driver's movements of the steering wheel.

If the driving pattern becomes noticeably erratic, the driver will be alerted by an acoustic alert and visual warning on the driver's screen.

The warning will be repeated if the driving pattern does not change.

#### 4.8.1.3 Driver Monitoring System



- Driver infrared camera

The driver infrared camera with eye tracking capability monitors the driver's face for eye and head movements.

The driver monitoring system has the following functions:

1. Attention detection
2. Drowsiness detection

##### Attention detection:

The system can detect the distraction of the driver by measuring the gaze direction and drowsiness of the driver based on blink duration, blink frequency and the opening speed of the eyes. If it is detected that the driver's attention is not on the road, the driver is alerted by means of visual and audible warnings.

The attention detection function is available for speeds above 20 km/h.

##### Drowsiness detection:

The system can detect the drowsiness of the driver based on the change in visual appearance over time. If slight drowsiness is detected, an audible warning is provided, and a rest recommendation pops up on the driver's screen. The alerts take place by means of visual and audible warnings if an increased level of drowsiness is detected. If the driver is detected to be very drowsy or sleeping, continuous visual and audible warnings are issued until the driver takes a stop for a rest.

The drowsiness detection system is always available but produces a warning for speeds above 10 km/h.

##### Display icons

Icon	Description
	Drowsiness detection unavailable (Icon is steady)

Icon	Description
	Drowsiness detection error (Icon is steady)

#### 4.8.1.4 Driver Attention Assist Settings

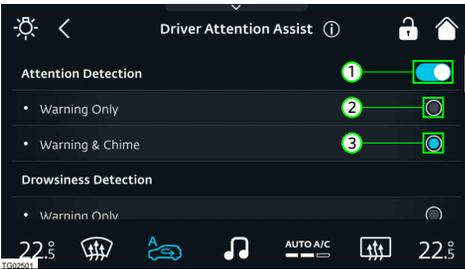
The settings for the driver attention assist can be adjusted using the control display.

The settings are only available when the attention detection function is activated.

Go to:

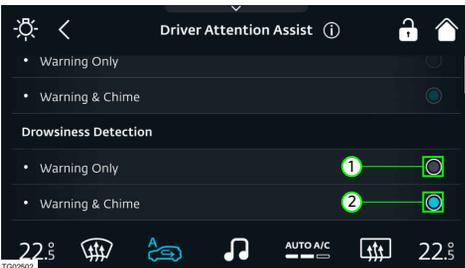
**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driving → Assist Systems → Driver Attention Assist**

For attention detection:



- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the attention detection.
- Tap on the button (2) to activate the visual warning only.
- Tap on the button (3) to activate the visual warning and chime.

For drowsiness detection:



- Tap on the button (1) to activate the visual warning only.
- Tap on the button (2) to activate the visual warning and chime.

#### 4.8.1.5 Limitations of Driver Attention Assist

The driver attention assist may not work in the following situations:

- The front smart camera view is obstructed by stickers or other objects.
- The lane markings are not visible.
- In case of heavy snow, rain or fog, the system may not detect the lane markings.
- Driver infrared camera is obstructed by body parts (hands or arms), objects, condensation, mist or contaminated by non-transparent dust, or dirt.
- If the driver's face is covered with clothing, hair fringe, a large hat or a face mask.
- If the driver is wearing infrared-blocking eyeglasses.

#### 4.8.2 Lane Safety Assist (if equipped)

##### 4.8.2.1 Safety Instructions

###### **WARNING**

- **Always keep your hands on the steering wheel so you can be ready to steer at any time. The lane safety assist system can stop functioning unexpectedly. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.**
- **There is a risk of an accident if the lane safety assist unexpectedly intervenes due to malfunction in lane detection. It is the driver's responsibility to steer according to traffic conditions.**

##### 4.8.2.2 Description

###### 4.8.2.2.1 Overview

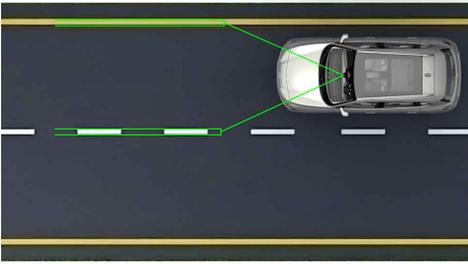
The lane safety assist (LSA) functions are designed to help reduce the risk of accidents in situations where the vehicle unintentionally leaves its lane on highways or other major roads.

The system functions in the speed range of approximately 60 km/h to 160 km/h.

The lane safety assist functions with the help of following features:

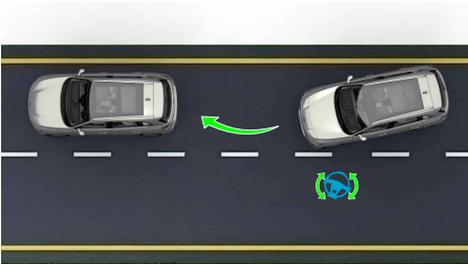
- Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

#### 4.8.2.2.2 Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK)



TG02503

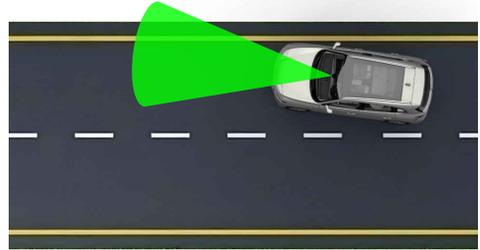
Emergency lane keeping uses front smart camera to monitor the edges of a road and its lane marker lines. If the vehicle is about to cross the edge of the road or lane marker line, emergency lane keep will attempt to actively steer the vehicle back onto the road. A visual warning shall be illuminated during intervention. If the attempt to steer the vehicle is not sufficient, the function will warn the driver to take over steering control.



TG02530

When the driver's hand is not on the steering wheel and emergency lane keeping performs two or more consecutive interventions within a rolling interval of 3 minutes, emergency lane keeping provides an acoustic warning and a corresponding warning pop-up message will appear.

#### 4.8.2.2.3 Lane Departure Warning (LDW)



TG02531

If you are approaching a detected lane marker and it appears likely that you will leave the lane, the system can warn you with acoustic and visual warning. The warning will be suppressed if the driver uses the turn indicator or after driver steering intervention.

#### 4.8.2.3 Display Icons

Icon	Description
	Icon illuminates when lane safety assist is deactivated. Icon flashes when there is an emergency lane keeping intervention or lane departure warning
	Icon illuminates when the lane safety assist is activated but conditions for emergency lane keeping steering intervention and lane departure warning are not fulfilled (e.g. vehicle speed is less than 60 kph). This states that lane safety assist is in passive state.
	Icon illuminates when lane safety assist is standby state in which lane safety assist is activated and is ready to be in action but no dangerous situation is detected
	Icon illuminates when emergency lane keeping is deactivated and lane departure warning is in passive state
	Icon illuminates when emergency lane keeping is deactivated and lane departure warning is in standby state

Icon	Description
	Icon illuminates when lane safety assist is in failure
	Level 1: Warning take steering wheel control
	Level 2: Warning take steering wheel control The system will be deactivated very soon.

#### 4.8.2.4 Lane Safety Assist Settings

You can select between warning only or warning and steering intervention.

It is also possible to adjust the warning sensitivity of the function.

Different settings for lane safety assist can be adjusted using the control display when the function is active.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driving → Assist Systems → Lane Safety Assist**



- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the lane safety assist.
- Tap on the button (2) to activate the warning only.
- Tap on the button (3) to activate the warning and intervention.
- Tap on the button (4) to set the desired warning sensitivity.
- Tap on the button (5) to activate/deactivate the warning chimes.

#### 4.8.2.5 Unavailability Conditions of Lane Safety Assist System

The lane safety assist system is not active when

- Any of the vehicle doors are open.
- Any ABS/ESC, TCS, or RCS functions are not available.
- One of the ABS/ESC, TCS, and RCS functions is in control.
- Hazards lights are activated.
- The vehicle is not being driven in the forward direction.
- The vehicle experiences large lateral and longitudinal acceleration.
- The system cannot detect proper lane markings on a certain side.

#### INFORMATION

*The lane safety assist system is active for lane markings with the following properties:*

- **Having White, Yellow, Blue, and Green colors**
- **With both continuous or dashed types**
- **Which do not have unsteady characteristics**
- **Which are not too sharp**
- **With proper lane widths if both sides of the lane markings are detected.**

#### 4.8.2.6 Limitations of Lane Safety Assist

The lane safety assist may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- During high winds
- Under uneven road surfaces
- On a snowy or icy road
- In a construction zone
- Heavy or uneven loads
- Incorrect tire pressure
- When an improper tire is installed on the vehicle such as
  - A spare tire
  - Tire with snow chain is used
  - Excessively worn or low pressure tire
- Front smart camera blocked with stickers or objects.
- The lane markings are worn away, dark or covered up by dirt or snow.
- During towing
- On the road that diverges, merges etc.

- In an area where the brightness of the scene that the camera detects changes suddenly, such as at the entrances and exits of the tunnels.

Under these conditions, the driver should deactivate the lane safety assist function.

### 4.8.3 Forward Collision Avoidance

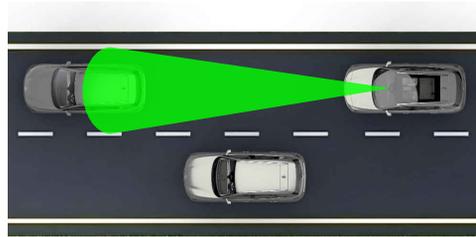
#### 4.8.3.1 Safety Instructions

##### **⚠ WARNING**

- **Never solely rely on a forward collision alert to warn you of a potential collision, this can result in serious injury or death. Always keep your eyes on the road when driving, forward collision alert is for guidance purposes only and is not a substitute for attentive driving.**
- **Several factors can reduce or impair the performance, causing either unnecessary, invalid, inaccurate, or missed warnings.**
- **It is the driver's responsibility to take immediate corrective action against forward collision alert as forward collision alert does not slow down the vehicle or apply brakes in every situation due to system limits.**
- **The advanced emergency braking function shall suppress or abort braking if the driver presses the accelerator pedal strongly or moves the steering wheel significantly.**
- **Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.**
- **Do not solely rely on the advanced emergency brake system to brake the vehicle. The driver is always responsible to monitor current traffic situations and brake the vehicle at the correct time.**
- **Evasive steering assist function shall abort itself if the driver presses the accelerator pedal strongly or moves the steering wheel significantly.**
- **Evasive steering assist function abort automated braking and starts intervention if the driver starts evasive maneuver during full or partial braking occurs.**

### 4.8.3.2 Description

#### 4.8.3.2.1 Overview



TO02349

Forward collision assist system helps the driver to avoid the collision by issuing a warning and if required braking the vehicle to a complete stop or providing evasive steering assist if the driver would like to perform evasive maneuver.

The front smart camera and the radar sensor monitor the area in front of the vehicle for the presence of a licensable vehicle and vulnerable road user such as pedestrian and bicycle.

The system warns the driver of potential hazards by providing three levels of assistance.

1. Warning
2. Braking Support
3. Advanced Emergency Braking (AEB)

When the object is detected in the vehicle's driving range acoustic warning with a flashing icon is displayed on the driver's screen to warn the driver. Warnings cancel automatically when the risk of a collision has been reduced.

If there is an impending collision and you are not applying the brakes enough, the braking force may be increased, depending on the situation.

If the driver does not react to the warning, the system may apply the brakes with strong braking force within the limits of the system in order to reduce the speed of impact in the event of a collision.

If the driver does react the evasive steering deployment warning, the system start assisting driver to perform evasive maneuver and any ongoing braking attempt shall be aborted.

You can adjust the warning sensitivity in three levels using the control display.

Forward collision assist has the following two functions,

- Distance Alert

- Forward Collision Avoidance
- Evasive Steering Support

#### 4.8.3.2.2 Distance Alert

The distance warning function warns the driver if the time interval to the vehicle ahead becomes too short. A warning symbol will be shown on the driver's screen.

Distance warning is active at vehicle speeds above 30 km/h and only reacts to vehicles driving in front of the vehicle, in the same direction and at low relative speed.

#### INFORMATION

***If the Adaptive Driver Assistance (if equipped) or Adaptive Cruise Control is active, distance alert is not triggered.***

#### 4.8.3.2.3 Forward Collision Avoidance (FCA)

The forward collision avoidance has the following three functions:

1. Pedestrian Detection
2. Forward Collision Alert
3. Advanced Emergency Braking

##### **Pedestrian Detection**

With a pedestrian detection system, the vehicle detects the pedestrian or bicyclist crossing the road. The function works with the help of a front smart camera and monitors if your vehicle is approaching a pedestrian or bicyclist. If a collision is imminent and the driver does not react in due time, an acoustic and visual alert is triggered.

##### **Forward Collision Alert**

Forward collision alert detects and warns the driver of approaching hazards when driving the vehicle. The system detects vehicles and vulnerable road users such as bicycles, and pedestrians travelling in the same direction as yours and provides an acoustic, visual alert and haptic warning to help avoid a collision.

##### **Advanced Emergency Braking (AEB)**

Advanced emergency braking can warn the driver about an impending forward collision and brake the vehicle strongly, if necessary.

The front smart camera and the radar sensor monitor the area in front of the vehicle for the presence of a licensable vehicle and vulnerable road users, such as pedestrian and bicycle.

When the system detects the collision is imminent, the advanced emergency braking applies the brake to avoid a collision or at least to mitigate its effect.

Advanced emergency braking limited performance:

Advanced emergency braking may enter a limited performance mode due to system limitations or environmental factors. The advanced emergency braking limited performance icon is displayed on the driver's screen to inform the driver. When the advanced emergency braking is in limited performance mode, both warning and braking with degraded performance are available.

Advanced emergency braking performance may be limited in the following conditions:

- a decrease in the field of view of the front smart camera
- cloudless blue sky
- large areas of gray tarmac without lane markings, road boundaries, etc.

Forward collision avoidance has the following modes:

**Off mode:** Forward collision assist is Off. The system will not provide warning or braking intervention.

**On mode:** Forward collision assist is On. The system will provide audible and visual warning to the driver with braking intervention.

##### **Forward collision avoidance operational limits**

Conditions	Forward collision avoidance mode	
	Warning only	Warning with auto braking
For stationary vehicle	5 - 140 km/h	5 - 140 km/h
For moving or braking vehicle	5 - 250 km/h	5 - 250 km/h
For crossing or stationary pedestrians, cyclists and motorbikes	5 - 85 km/h	5 - 85 km/h

#### 4.8.3.2.4 Evasive Steering Support (ESS)

Evasive steering support system aids you in steering around a possible collision target ahead of you that you are quickly approaching.

The front smart camera and the radar sensor monitor the area in front of the vehicle for the presence of a licensable vehicle and vulnerable road user as pedestrian.

The evasive steering support function helps prevent collisions with vehicles and pedestrians, in front of the vehicle. When a collision risk is detected, system warns the driver about deployment status of evasive steering support.

When evasive steering support is deployed and if the driver starts turning steering wheel to initiate evasive maneuver, then system immediately starts aiding the driver providing additional steering effort. After passing the target, the system delivers steering effort again in the opposite direction to assist the driver to return the vehicle to initial trajectory. After vehicle trajectory is corrected upon completion of successful evasive and steering back maneuvers, the system will go back to standby.

Evasive steering support can be activated under the following conditions:

- When the forward collision assist system detects an imminent and evadable collision towards object ahead.
- When the steering wheel is turned towards evasion direction during the evasive steering system is ready.
- In case of no blockage or infeasibility is detected for target path for the intended evasion.
- Evasive steering support is turned on via HMI.

Evasive steering support cannot be activated or aborted under the following conditions:

- Relevant error occurs.
- Clear driver reaction is detected by brake pedal press.
- Clear driver reaction is detected by steering wheel turn against the evasive steering support (ESS).
- The target path for the intended evasion is blocked or otherwise infeasible.

Evasive steering assist has the following modes:

**Off mode:** ESS is Off. The system will not provide warning or steering assist.

**On mode:** ESS is On. The system will provide visual warning and steering assist to the driver.

**Evasive steering assist avoidance operational limits**

Conditions	Vehicle Speed
Stationary Vehicles	30 to 80 kph
Moving Vehicles	30 to 80 kph

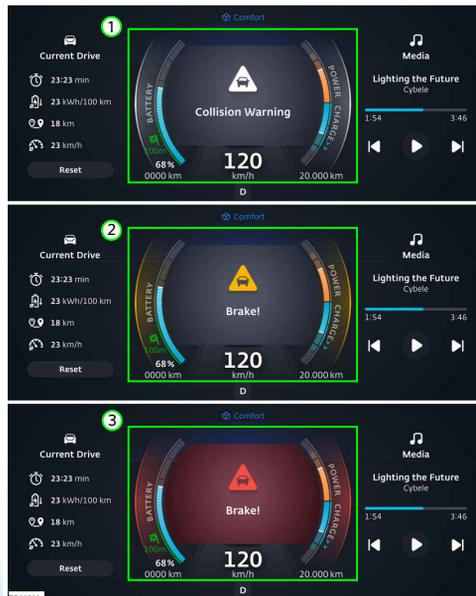
Stationary Adult Pedestrians	30 to 60 kph
------------------------------	--------------

**4.8.3.2.5 Display Icons**

**Display icons**

Icon	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Advanced emergency braking alert (Icon is flashing with warning sound)</li> <li>▪ Collision avoidance is manually disabled or initializing (Icon is steady)</li> </ul>
	Advanced emergency braking limited performance (Icon is steady)
	Evasive steering assist ready (deployed) alert (Icon is flashing)
	Evasive steering assist is active (intervening) alert (Icon is steady)
	Evasive steering assist error

**Forward collision avoidance display on the driver's screen**



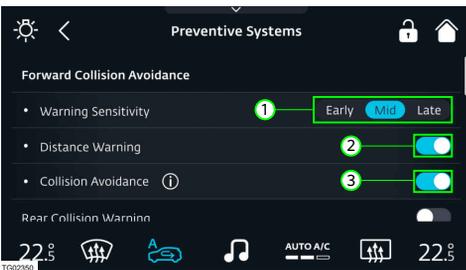
1. Collision warning
2. Partial braking
3. Emergency braking

#### 4.8.3.3 Forward Collision Avoidance Settings

The settings of forward collision assist function can be adjusted using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driving → Assist Systems → Preventive Systems**



- Tap on the button (1) to set the desired warning sensitivity.
- Tap on the button (2) to activate/deactivate the distance warning.
- Tap on the button (3) to activate/deactivate the collision avoidance.
- Evasive steering support can be activated or deactivated using control display.

#### 4.8.3.4 Limitations of Forward Collision Avoidance

The forward collision avoidance may not work in the following situations:

- If the front smart camera lens is contaminated due to tinted, filmed or coated windshield, damaged glass, or sticking of foreign material (sticker, bug, etc.) on the glass.
- If the radar is blocked due to sticking of foreign material (sticker, bug, etc.) or installing unapproved fitments on the bumper.
- When driving in heavy rain or snow, or thick fog.
- When driving on ice or icing conditions.
- The brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel.
- A vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist suddenly cuts in front.

- The vehicle in front is a bus, heavy truck, truck with unusually shaped luggage, and trailer.

#### INFORMATION

- **Evasive steering support can only be turned ON if collision avoidance is turned ON. If collision avoidance is turned OFF then, evasive steering support is tuned OFF automatically.**
- **Evasive steering support can only be turned ON if warning sensitivity is Mid or Early. If warning sensitivity is selected as Late, then Evasive steering support is tuned OFF automatically.**

#### 4.8.4 Corner Radar Features

##### 4.8.4.1 Description

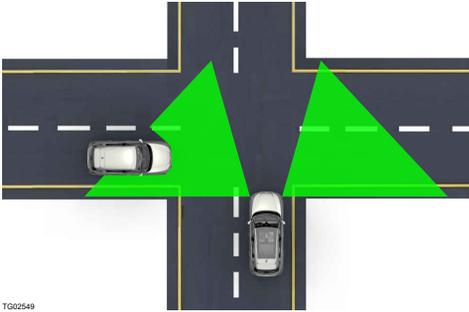
The vehicle is installed with two rear corner short-range radars and these radars provide the following vehicle level function:

1. Front cross traffic alert
2. Rear cross traffic alert
3. Blind spot warning
4. Occupant safe exit
5. Rear collision warning (if equipped)

##### 4.8.4.2 Front Cross Traffic Alert (if equipped)

#### WARNING

- **The driver is solely responsible for controlling the vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in an accident.**
- **If the cross traffic alert warnings stop after a certain amount of time, this does not indicate that vehicles or pedestrians are no longer around your vehicle. The driver is solely responsible to observe the surrounding.**
- **For the first drive after vehicle delivery, the radars will take some time to self-calibrate for the proper functioning of the system. The calibration process may take up to 15 minutes. During calibration, some radar functions may not work properly. The calibration process does not impact safe driving as the driver is still responsible for vehicle control.**



TG02549

When the system detects an approaching vehicle from the left or right in front of your vehicle, while driving out of the parking lot an acoustic warning will sound with a warning indication on the driver's screen. The system also alerts the driver when approaching an intersection and a vehicle is detected from left or right in front of your vehicle. If the driver does not react in time to the warning the system actively applies the brake to mitigate the collision.

The brake intervention is only provided for the first 10 m distance after shifting the gear selector from P to D position. After this, the system provides only acoustic warnings while driving forward.

The system uses the short-range radar installed on both sides of the front bumper to detect an approaching vehicle from the right or left side of the vehicle.

The front cross traffic alert operates up to speed 15 km/h.

**ATTENTION**

***In the congested junctions with many road users, the system may provide early or late acoustic alert. The driver is solely responsible to observe the surrounding.***

**Display icons**

Icon	Description
	Cross traffic alert/Brake left
	Cross traffic alert/Brake right

	Cross traffic brake
--	---------------------

**4.8.4.3 Rear Cross Traffic Alert with Brake (if equipped)**



TG02550

The rear cross traffic alert system can help alert the driver of an approaching vehicle or objects behind the vehicle while the vehicle is reversing, for example, pulling out of a parking space.

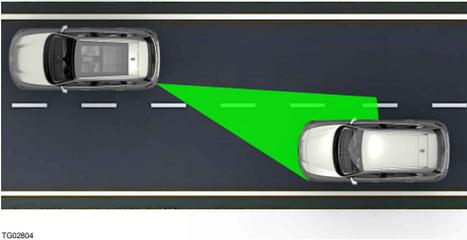
The system uses the short-range radar installed on both sides of the rear bumper to detect an approaching vehicle from the rear. If an imminent collision is detected, an acoustic warning will sound with a warning indication on the driver's screen to alert the driver. If the driver does not react in time to the warning the system actively applies the brake to mitigate the collision.

The rear cross traffic alert operates up to speed 9 km/h.

**Display icons**

Icon	Description
	Cross traffic alert/Brake left
	Cross traffic alert/Brake right
	Cross traffic brake

#### 4.8.4.4 Blind Spot Warning (if equipped)



TC02804

#### **WARNING**

- *The blind spot warning is a supplementary function to assist the driver while driving. The function cannot always judge if it is safe to change lanes. There is a risk of an accident.*
- *For the first drive after vehicle delivery, the radars will take some time to self-calibrate for the proper functioning of the system. The calibration process may take up to 15 minutes. During calibration, some radar functions may not work properly. The calibration process does not impact safe driving as the driver is still responsible for vehicle control.*

#### **INFORMATION**

*The blind spot warning function will not be available during the calibration process of the radar.*

The blind spot warning monitors the blind spot and traffic in the adjacent lanes behind the vehicle.

Two radar sensors in the rear bumper detect fast approaching vehicles on adjacent lanes and a warning symbol in the outside mirror and on the driver's screen is activated. And if adjacent lanes are occupied within the limits of the blind spot zone, even if there is no change in relative speed, the warning symbol will continue to flash until the blind spot zone is cleared.

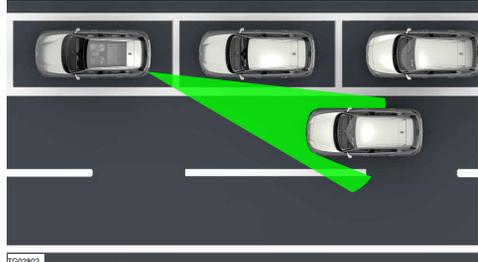
When the driver uses the turn indicator to change lanes the warning symbol flashes in the corresponding outside mirror indicating that there is a risk of collision if the system detects a possible collision.

#### **Display icons**

Icon	Description
	Blind spot warning left

Icon	Description
	Blind spot warning right

#### 4.8.4.5 Occupant Safe Exit (if equipped)



TC02809

#### **WARNING**

- *Always pay attention to traffic and area around your vehicle.*
- *The occupant safe exit system does not replace the attention of the vehicle occupants. The vehicle occupants are always responsible for opening the doors and exiting the vehicle.*
- *The alert may not occur in time if traffic/object is approaching very quickly.*

The occupant safe exit system can detect object approaching from behind such as unseen vehicle or a bicycle and warn the driver if a door is opened. The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle.

The warning will be provided as below:

1. If the vehicle is stationary and any approaching object is detected.
  - a warning light will lit in the corresponding outside mirror and on the driver's screen.
2. If the door is opened and any approaching object is detected.
  - a warning light will lit in the corresponding outside mirror and on the driver's screen with an acoustic warning.

The occupant safe exit function will be available for 3 minutes after the vehicle is turned Off.

## Display icons

Icon	Description
	<p>Level 1: Blind spot warning left when the object is detected. (Icon is steady)</p> <p>Level 2: Blind spot warning left when the object is detected and any door is opened. (Icon is flashing)</p>
	<p>Level 1: Blind spot warning right when the object is detected. (Icon is steady)</p> <p>Level 2: Blind spot warning right when the object is detected and any door is opened. (Icon is flashing)</p>

### 4.8.4.6 Rear Collision Warning (if equipped)

The rear collision warning function can help the driver to avoid being hit by a vehicle approaching from behind. A radar sensor in the rear bumper scans the traffic behind the vehicle to detect an impending rear end collision. When a hazardous situation is detected, the system warns the driver of the vehicle behind by means of hazard warning lights flashing at a high frequency.

#### Display icons

Icon	Description
	Rear collision warning (Icon is flashing)

### 4.8.4.7 Activating/Deactivating Corner Radar Features

The corner radar features can be activated/deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driving → Assist Systems → Preventive Systems → Cross traffic alert with brake**



- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the rear cross traffic alert.
- Tap on the button (2) to activate/deactivate the front cross traffic alert.
- Tap on the button (3) to activate/deactivate the blind spot warning.
- Tap on the button (4) to activate/deactivate the occupant safe exit.
- Tap on the button (5) to activate/deactivate the rear collision warning (if equipped).

### 4.8.4.8 Limitations

In the following situations, cross traffic alert may not work properly.

- If the front end or side of an approaching target is small (e.g. Sports vehicle)
- When there is an object between your vehicle and an approaching vehicle.
- When driving on a road with a grade that changes sharply (sharp incline/decline).
- If the shape of an approaching vehicle is unusual (tractors, motorcycles with sidecars, etc.)

## 4.8.5 Adaptive Driver Assistance (if equipped)

### 4.8.5.1 Safety Instructions

#### **WARNING**

- **The adaptive driver assistance function is an aid only to assist the driver while driving the vehicle. Do not rely on the function in all situations, it cannot drive the vehicle autonomously. It is the driver's responsibility to control the vehicle at all times.**
- **Due to system limitations, the function may not be able to provide independent and appropriate support in all traffic conditions. The driver is**

**always responsible for controlling the vehicle according to the current traffic conditions. Otherwise, there may be a risk of an accident.**

#### 4.8.5.2 Description

##### 4.8.5.2.1 Overview

Adaptive driver assistance (ADA) works with the help of front smart camera and front radar. The system maintains your vehicle's position in the lane you are traveling in and the distance between it and the target vehicle ahead. It helps to increase driver comfort with continuous control support to keep your vehicle in the middle of the lane without exceeding the distance and/or speed set by the driver relative to the vehicle in front.

##### Operating requirements

To use the adaptive driver assistance following conditions must be satisfied:

- The adaptive driver assistance function is active.
- The intelligent adaptive cruise control is active and in control.
- Your vehicle is in a driving path with proper lane markings or road boundaries.

##### 4.8.5.2.2 Adaptive Driver Assistance (ADA)

The adaptive driver assistance supports the driver at speeds up to 160 km/h to keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane, in addition to the intelligent adaptive cruise control assistant with stop-and-go feature (if equipped).

The system can support the driver in case of missing lanes by the following vehicle ahead up to 60 km/h.

##### 4.8.5.3 Display Icons

Icon	Description
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral and longitudinal controls are in an active state. (Icon is steady or flashing)
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral control is active, and longitudinal control is in an override state. (Icon is slow flashing)
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral control is at the system boundary and the longitudinal control is in an active state. (Icon is fast flashing)

Icon	Description
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral and longitudinal controls are in standby state. (Icon is steady)
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral and longitudinal controls are in a failure state. (Icon is steady)
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral control is in failure and longitudinal controls is in an active state. (Icon is steady)
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral control is in failure and longitudinal control is in a passive state. (Icon is steady)
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral control is in passive state and longitudinal control is in an active state. (Icon is steady)
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral control is in passive state and longitudinal control is in an error state. (Icon is steady)

##### 4.8.5.4 Using Adaptive Driver Assistance

Adaptive driver assistance can be activated using the driver's screen function selection menu.

- Select the "Adaptive Driver Assistance" on the driver's screen using right the steering wheel switch. (Refer to [6.2.3 Operating Driver's Screen](#) )

##### Changing adaptive driver assistance settings

The adaptive driver assistance feature settings can be changed using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driving → Assist Systems → Adaptive Driver Assistance**



- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the intelligent mode.
- Tap on the desired preference (2) to set speed from the traffic sign when the intelligent mode is active.
- Press the "+" or "-" button (3) to increase or decrease the speed offset for detected traffic sign when the intelligent mode is active.

#### 4.8.5.5 Limitations of Adaptive Driver Assistance

Adaptive driver assistance may not function properly in following conditions:

- The lane markings are not visible or the vehicle is on a sharp bend.
- If the vehicle is not in the drivable path.
- Driving path is too narrow or too wide.
- In case of sudden lateral or linear movements of the vehicle.

#### **WARNING**

**The above list does not include all limitations for the adaptive driver assistance. The driver is always responsible for controlling the vehicle according to the current traffic conditions and in all situations.**

### 4.8.6 Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control (if equipped)

#### 4.8.6.1 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Adaptive cruise control maintains an appropriate headway with respect to any licensable vehicle in dense traffic situations on highways and secondary roads and in cities.

When adaptive cruise control detects a vehicle ahead, it can brake or accelerate the vehicle within system limits. When approaching the target vehicle, it automatically brakes to match its speed and then maintains the set distance as much as possible. On open roads without traffic, it operates like a cruise control system. In other words, when no vehicle

ahead is detected, the system will accelerate or decelerate to maintain the set speed until it reaches the set speed value.

Adaptive cruise control set speed range is 20 km/h to 170 km/h. The system will automatically maintain a selected speed and distance.

#### 4.8.6.2 Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control (iACC) (if equipped)

Intelligent adaptive cruise control (iACC) includes the features of adaptive cruise control with stop-and-go feature (if equipped) and adds speed sign recognition, which can automatically adjust the set speed of the vehicle to the detected speed limit. The function assists the driver in controlling the speed and the set distance to the vehicle driving ahead.

Intelligent adaptive cruise control can automatically or manually take over detected speed limits between 20 km/h and 140 km/h as the set speed.

#### **WARNING**

**Driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in safe manner and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations. The function is supplementary to driver assistance system intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer. It cannot handle all situations in various traffic, weather, and road conditions.**

#### **INFORMATION**

**The speed of the vehicle can be increased or decreased at any time by pressing the accelerator or brake pedal.**

#### **WARNING**

- **The detection area ahead can be limited, for example, by rain, snow, heavy spray, or light shining into the camera.**
- **The systems may not function correctly in unclear traffic situations, such as turning lanes, exit ramps, construction zones, rises or dips that obstruct visibility, intersections, toll stations or city traffic.**
- **Resting your foot on accelerator pedal may override the adaptive cruise control and system may not apply brake automatically in this situation.**
- **Driver is always responsible to check the adaptive cruise control indicator on the driver's screen to determine which mode the system is in before using the feature. If iACC is not active, the vehicle will not automatically reduce speed after detecting**

**preceding vehicle. There is a risk of an accident and serious injury.**

- **Always observe the traffic condition and surrounding while changing the drive mode when the adaptive cruise control is active. When the drive mode is changed, the vehicle acceleration characteristic also changes.**

#### 4.8.6.3 Display Icons

Icon	Description
	Detected speed limit is displayed in the circle on driver's screen.
	Accept or reject the recommended speed limit
	Adaptive cruise control is active (Icon is steady)
	Adaptive cruise control override (Icon is flashing)
	Adaptive cruise control passive (Icon is steady)
	Adaptive cruise control failure (Icon is steady)

#### 4.8.6.4 Using Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control

##### 4.8.6.4.1 Overview



1. Adaptive Cruise Control On/Off
2. Cancel adaptive cruise control
3. Resume adaptive cruise control/Increase set speed/Accept set speed/Confirm drive-off

4. Set adaptive cruise control speed/Decrease set speed/Reject set speed

##### 4.8.6.4.2 Switching adaptive cruise control On/Off



1. Select the "Adaptive Cruise Control" on the driver's screen, using right steering wheel switch. (Refer to [6.2.3 Operating Drivers Screen](#) )
2. Press button to turn On/Off the adaptive cruise control.

##### 4.8.6.4.3 Activating adaptive cruise control



1. If required, activate the intelligent mode (Intelligent adaptive cruise control). (Refer to [4.8.6.4.9 Activating intelligent adaptive cruise control](#) )

2. Press the right stalk down to set the adaptive cruise control speed.

The set speed is displayed on the driver's screen in green and is maintained automatically.

To activate the adaptive cruise control when the vehicle is stationary, depress the brake pedal and activate the adaptive cruise control. When the function is active, release the brake pedal and allow the vehicle to drive off. In this case, the set speed will be 20 km/h.

## INFORMATION

The driver can activate only one function at a time from the list below:

- Cruise control
- Adaptive driver assistance (if equipped)
- Speed Limiter
- Adaptive cruise control

If one function is activated, the system will automatically deactivate the other if already active.

### 4.8.6.4.4 Changing adaptive cruise control speed



To increase or decrease the adaptive cruise control speed,

- Long press the right stalk up or down, which changes the speed in 10 km/h increments.
- Short press the right stalk up or down, which changes the speed in 1 km/h increments.

The new set speed is displayed on the driver's screen.

### ⚠ WARNING

**When the right stalk is long pressed up, the vehicle may accelerate quickly. There is a risk of an accident by losing vehicle control. Always observe posted speed limits and current traffic regulations.**

### 4.8.6.4.5 Resuming set speed



If adaptive cruise control is set at the desired speed and then the brakes are applied or button (1) is pressed, the cruise control is deactivated without erasing the set speed from memory.

- Press the right stalk up (2) to resume the system with set speed on memory.

### 4.8.6.4.6 Cancelling adaptive cruise control



- To cancel the adaptive cruise control, press the button (1) or press the brake pedal (2).

When adaptive cruise control is deactivated, the set speed will be stored and displayed on the driver's screen as a set speed on memory.

### ⚠ WARNING

**The resume function should only be used if traffic and road conditions allow. Resuming a set speed that is too high or too low for prevailing traffic and road conditions could cause the vehicle to accelerate or decelerate too sharply for safe operation. There is a risk of collision and death or serious personal injury. Always observe current traffic conditions.**

## INFORMATION

**If the vehicle or the system is turned Off or restarted, the stored set speed will be erased.**

### 4.8.6.4.7 Stop-and-Go function (if equipped)



When the target vehicle in front comes to a complete stop, the system will brake your vehicle to a complete stop, maintaining the set headway setting.

#### Automatic drive-off

If the target vehicle starts moving within 5 seconds, the system will drive-off your vehicle automatically.

#### Manual drive-off

If the vehicle stays at a standstill for more than 5 seconds, automatic drive-off is inhibited. The system will display a warning on the driver's screen when drive-off is possible.

- Tip the accelerator pedal or press the right stalk up to manually drive-off the vehicle.

### 4.8.6.4.8 Overtake support

#### WARNING

**The driver is always responsible to monitor the vehicle. The system may activate while changing lanes or exiting the motorways and increase the vehicle speed. There is a risk of an accident.**

When following a target vehicle and the driver indicates the intention to overtake by activating the turn indicator, the ACC system helps the driver by decreasing the gap distance.

The function supports the driver by accelerating rapidly to the set speed until the vehicle is completely overtaken.

### 4.8.6.4.9 Activating intelligent adaptive cruise control

The function can be activated when the following condition is satisfied,

- Adaptive cruise control is activated.

## INFORMATION

**When the intelligent adaptive cruise control is activated, the system will automatically activate the traffic sign recognition function if already deactivated.**

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driving → Assist Systems → Adaptive Cruise Control**



- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the intelligent mode (Intelligent adaptive cruise control).
- Tap on the desired preference (2) to set speed from the traffic sign when the intelligent mode is active.

Auto: Detected speed limit is automatically adopted as ACC set speed.

Ask: Detected speed limit is proposed to the driver on the driver's screen. Driver can accept/decline the proposed speed by moving the right stalk up/down.

- Press the "+" or "-" button (3) to increase or decrease the speed offset for detected traffic sign when the intelligent mode is active.

### 4.8.6.4.10 Overriding adaptive cruise control

When the accelerator pedal is depressed and driver requested torque is more than that of the system, the adaptive cruise control icon starts to blink. In this case, the vehicle speed would increase above the set speed or the distance to the relevant target would start to decrease. As the accelerator pedal is released,

the vehicle will slow down to the set speed or the headway setting.

Adaptive cruise control is automatically deactivated if the driver overrides the system for more than 60 seconds.

Overriding the system will not change the set speed. The driver should be careful when overriding the system since vehicle speed and headway are not monitored by the system in this state.

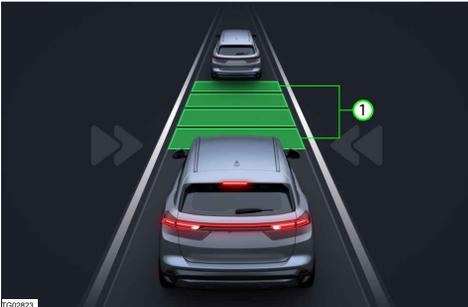
**ATTENTION**

**Resting your foot on the accelerator pedal may override adaptive cruise control. In case of override, automatic braking will not be applied, and the system will not maintain the distance to the vehicle in front.**

**4.8.6.4.11 Switching between cruise control and intelligent adaptive cruise control**

- Select the "Adaptive Cruise Control" or "Cruise Control" on the driver's screen using right steering wheel switch. (Refer to 6.2.3 Operating Drivers Screen )

**4.8.6.4.12 Adjusting the headway setting**



1. Headway setting levels

The headway setting can be adjusted using the right stalk in 4 different levels. The set headway is displayed on the driver's screen (1).



When the adaptive cruise control is On,

- Push the right stalk forward to increase the headway setting.
- Pull the right stalk backward (towards you) to decrease the headway setting.

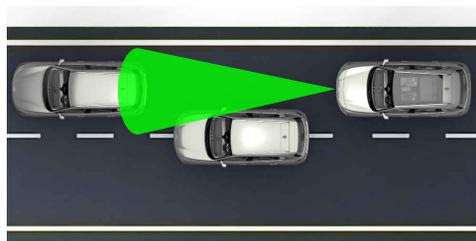
The vehicle will then maintain the set distance until,

- The vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle ahead moves out of your lane or view of the front radar.
- The headway setting is changed.

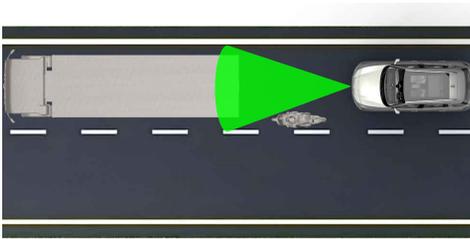
**4.8.6.5 Limitations of Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control**

The front smart camera and radar sensor vision can be impaired by rain, snow, ice, fog, loose gravel or spray. Vehicles in front will not be detected properly or may not be detected at all. Reflective objects such as ice, heavy rain, crash barriers or tunnel entrances may impair the functionality of the radar sensor.

- Adaptive cruise control's speed control performance may be reduced on high gradient roads.
- Vehicle cutting lane will not be detected unless it is completely in the same lane.

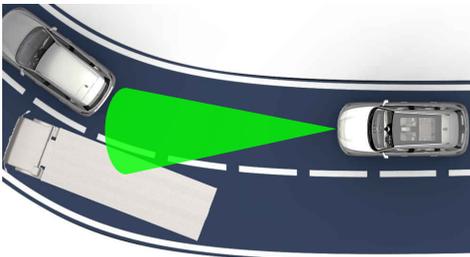


- Vehicle such as motorcycle may be detected too late unless they are completely in front of your vehicle.



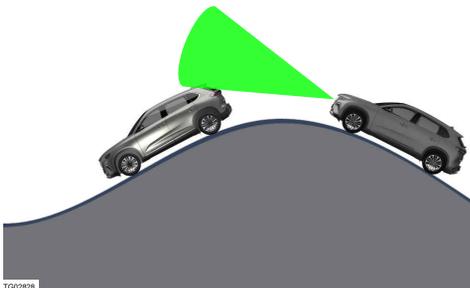
TG02821

- Target vehicle may be lost momentarily on curve roads and junctions and can be detected again suddenly. This may lead to rapid acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle. Adjust the set speed accordingly or cancel adaptive cruise control on curves and junctions.



TG02824

- Do not use the adaptive cruise control when driving on steep hills as adaptive cruise control may not detect a vehicle ahead or may detect suddenly.



TG02826

- The system may not respond in the following cases:
  - Stopped vehicles entering the field of view of the sensors for the first time
  - Vehicle coming from the opposite lane

- Special vehicles (trailers, narrow vehicles, etc.)
- Animals
- Pedestrians

### INFORMATION

**When the front smart camera or radar view is blocked, a warning is displayed on the driver's screen. The adaptive cruise control will enter a failure state. Remove the obstacles in front of the front smart camera and radar, and restart the adaptive cruise control.**

## 4.8.7 Speed Limiter

### 4.8.7.1 Intelligent Speed Limiter (iSL)

Intelligent speed limiter function detects the speed limit from the traffic signs with the help of a front smart camera. Depending on the driver's set preference, the detected speed can be automatically set as the current speed limit of the vehicle or the system will ask for confirmation each time.

It is also possible to set the speed limit offset for detected speed using the control display. The system will allow the vehicle to reach the set speed offset. The driver can override the set speed limit by hardly pressing the accelerator pedal. If the vehicle speed is more than the set speed, the system will warn the driver by flashing the speed limiter icon on the driver's screen.

### WARNING

**Do not rely on intelligent speed limiter to determine the appropriate speed limit or driving speed. Always drive at a safe speed based on current traffic and road conditions.**

### INFORMATION

**When the intelligent speed limiter is activated, the system will automatically activate the traffic sign recognition function if already deactivated.**

### 4.8.7.2 Display Icons

Icon	Description
	Speed limiter active (Icon is steady)
	Speed limiter is overridden (Icon is flashing)

	Speed limiter is in a standby state (Icon is steady)
	Speed limiter is in an error state (Icon is steady)
	Intelligent speed limiter active (Icon is steady)
	Intelligent speed limiter active but overridden (Icon is flashing)
	Intelligent speed limiter standby (Icon is steady)
	Intelligent speed limiter failure (Icon is steady)

### 4.8.7.3 Using Intelligent Speed Limiter

#### 4.8.7.3.1 Overview



1. Intelligent speed limiter On/Off
2. Cancel intelligent speed limiter
3. Resume intelligent speed limiter/Increase set speed/Accept set speed
4. Set intelligent speed limiter speed/Decrease set speed/Reject set speed

#### 4.8.7.3.2 Switching speed limiter On/Off



1. Select the "Speed Limiter" on the driver's screen using the right steering wheel switch.
2. Press the button to turn On/Off the speed limiter.

#### 4.8.7.3.2 Changing speed limit



To increase or decrease the speed limit manually:

- long press the right stalk up or down, which changes the speed limit in 5 km/h increments.
- short press the right stalk up or down, which changes the speed limit in 1 km/h increments.

The new set speed limit is displayed on the driver's screen.

#### 4.8.7.3.4 Resuming speed limit



If the speed limit is set at the desired speed and then the button (1) is pressed, the intelligent speed limiter is deactivated without erasing the set speed limit from memory.

- Press the right stalk up (2) to resume the system with set speed limit on memory.

#### 4.8.7.3.5 Cancelling intelligent speed limiter



- Press the button to cancel the intelligent speed limiter.

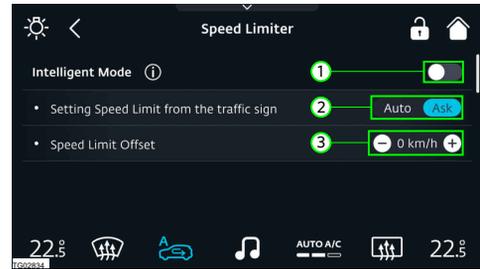
When the intelligent speed limiter is deactivated, the set speed limit will be stored and displayed on the driver's screen as a set speed limit on memory.

#### 4.8.7.4 Speed Limiter Settings

Speed limiter settings can be changed using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driving  
→ Assist Systems → Speed Limiter**



- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the intelligent speed limiter mode.
- Tap on the desired preference (2) to set speed limit from the traffic sign when the intelligent mode is active.



Auto: Detected speed limit is automatically adopted as current speed limit.

Ask: Detected speed limit is proposed to the driver on the driver's screen. Driver can accept/decline the proposed speed limit by moving the right stalk up/down.

- Press the "+" or "-" button (3) to increase or decrease the speed offset for detected traffic sign when the intelligent mode is active.

#### INFORMATION

*The driver can activate only one function at a time from the list below:*

- Cruise control
- Adaptive driver assistance (if equipped)
- Speed Limiter
- Adaptive cruise control

*If one function is activated, the system will automatically deactivate the other if already active.*

#### 4.8.7.5 Limitations of Intelligent Speed Limiter

The intelligent speed limiter may not work in the following situations:

- If the speed limit signs are not clearly visible due to heavy rain, snow or fog.
- If the direct sunlight or bright light from oncoming traffic is interfering with the view of the camera.
- If the camera view is blocked when the vehicle is driven very close to the vehicle in front.
- If the speed limit signs are concealed by objects.
- If the speed limits stored in the map database are incorrect or outdated.

The list above does not represent a complete list of situations that may interfere with the proper operation of intelligent speed limiter. It may fail to provide warnings for many other reasons.

#### 4.8.8 Traffic Sign Assist

##### 4.8.8.1 Safety Instructions

### ⚠ WARNING

**Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles and traffic participants, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulation.**

**The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer - it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather, and road conditions. The driver is always responsible for operating the vehicle safely.**

##### 4.8.8.2 Overview

The traffic sign assist (TSA) function assists the driver by displaying detected speed limits and traffic signs with a restriction indicated by an additional sign on the driver's screen. Traffic signs are evaluated using the front smart camera and the navigation system's map data.

The system detects the Speed Limit Sign, No Overtaking or Passing Sign and No Entry Sign. If the vehicle exceeds the perceived speed limit or performs prohibited action the system will alert the driver by flashing the applicable icon with an acoustic warning.

Within the limits of the system and depending on the country, implicit speed limit signs such as school zones, highways and residential areas are recognized, and the applicable speed limits are displayed.

In case of different speed limit information to be observed under different traffic conditions, an additional sign will be displayed below the speed limit.

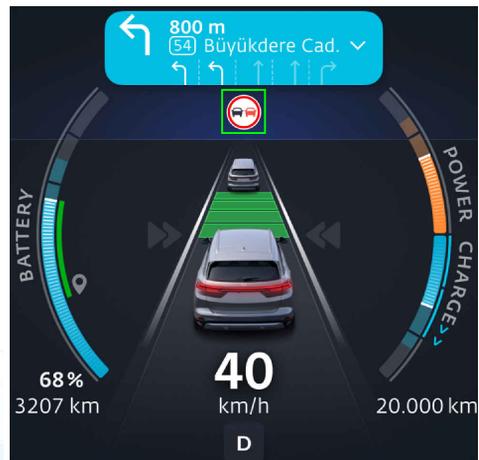
### INFORMATION

- **The speed limit that is currently applicable is displayed on the driver's screen. If speed limit information on the road cannot be recognized, a '---' sign will be displayed in the speed limit display.**
- **Navigation service is provided free of charge for 7 years with the vehicle and will be maintained for at least a total of 14 years after production.**

##### 4.8.8.3 Display Icons

Icon	Description
	Traffic sign speed limit display.
	Speed limit assist function is disabled.
	Speed limit assist function failure.

Example of traffic sign and its location on the driver's screen.



TG02875

#### 4.8.8.4 Activating/Deactivating Traffic Sign Assist

##### INFORMATION

Follow the below steps to effectively use the traffic sign recognition feature:

1. Ensure that your profile is logged in.
2. Make sure that the Go application is open.

The traffic sign assist function settings can be adjusted using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driving  
→ Assist Systems → Traffic Sign Assist



- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the speed limit assist.
- Tap on the button (2) to activate/deactivate the warning chimes, when the speed limit assist is active.
- Tap on the button (3) to activate/deactivate the no-pass assist.
- If equipped:  
Tap on the button (4) to activate/deactivate the give way assist.

##### INFORMATION

**The traffic sign assist function is automatically activated when the intelligent adaptive cruise control or intelligent speed limiter function is activated.**

#### 4.8.8.5 Limitations

The traffic sign assist is subject to certain system limitations and may be unavailable or only partially available in the following situations:

- When visibility is poor, such as in snow, rain, fog, or heavy spray.
- When there is glare, for example from oncoming traffic or the sun.

- If the camera's visual field is covered, for example by dirt or stickers.
- If the traffic signs are completely or partially covered, for example by trees, snow, dirt, or other vehicles.
- If traffic signs do not conform to the standard format.
- If traffic signs are damaged or bent.
- If the traffic signs or the roadways have changed, and the navigation data is no longer up to date.

#### 4.8.10 Active Emergency Stop

##### 4.8.10.1 Overview

Active emergency stop (AES) is a safety function that brings the vehicle to a controlled stop when the driver becomes unresponsive. It works while adaptive driver assistance or rush-hour assist is active.

Active emergency stop (AES) monitors steering inputs as well as accelerator and brake pedals. If the system detects that the driver is not responding and the vehicle may drift out of its lane, it issues warnings such as "eyes on road" or "hands on wheel." If the driver does not react after several warnings, Active emergency stop (AES) begins a controlled deceleration and stops the vehicle safely. This helps prevent collisions and keeps the vehicle from moving into other traffic or obstacles.

##### 4.8.10.2 Activation of Active Emergency Stop

- Active emergency stop can only be activated when either adaptive driver assistance or rush hour assist is active.
- The system activates the active emergency stop if the driver does not respond to repeated safety prompts.

##### 4.8.10.3 Operation Phases

After active emergency stop is activated, the system works in two phases.

###### Driver Warning with Hard Brake Pulses

- The system applies three short and strong brake pulses.
- These pulses shake the vehicle to warn the driver.
- The purpose of this phase is to cause a driver reaction before the system starts full braking.

###### Controlled Deceleration to Standstill

If the driver does not react:

- The vehicle starts a smooth and controlled deceleration.
- The vehicle continues braking until it comes to a complete stop.
- During this braking process, the hazard lights switch on automatically.

After the vehicle stops:

- The interior lights switch on.
- The cabin ventilation activates to support driver comfort and well-being.

#### 4.8.10.4 Cancelling Active Emergency Stop

The active emergency stop (AES) system can be cancelled at any time during its operation if the driver performs any of the following actions:

- Presses the hazard light button.
- Moves the gear selector out of the Drive (D) position.
- Applies a sudden steering input.
- Applies a steering input while pressing the accelerator pedal.
- Applies a steering input while pressing the brake pedal.
- Presses the brake pedal strongly.
- Applies a rapid accelerator pedal input.
- Presses the ADAS stalk cancel button.



Once a valid cancellation input is detected, active emergency stop (AES) is immediately deactivated, and normal vehicle control is restored to the driver.

#### 4.8.10.5 Display Icons

Icon	Description
	Icon illuminates when lane safety assist is in failure state.

Icon	Description
	Level 2: Warning take steering wheel control The system will be deactivated very soon.

#### 4.8.10.6 Driver Screen Notifications

Follow the notifications provided by system on the driver screen.

### 4.9 Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)

Electric vehicles (EV) generate considerably less sound than vehicles with combustion engines. It is hard for pedestrians to hear an approaching electric vehicle, which may increase the likelihood of a collision resulting in serious injury or even death. An artificial sound generator emits sound while driving below 30 km/h to warn surrounding traffic and pedestrians about electric vehicle.

If the AVAS is not working, a warning indicator will be shown on the driver's screen. It is recommended to visit Togg authorized service and have the system corrected.

#### Display icons

Icon	Description
	Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS) is not working.

#### **WARNING**

- *The volume and audibility of the AVAS may be restricted by snow or heavy soiling in the area of the front grille. This could result in accidents.*
- *Before each journey, always check the area of the front grill for heavy soiling and clean if necessary.*

### 4.10 Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

#### 4.10.1 General Information

The vehicle is equipped Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS), which monitors the tire pressure and issues a warning if the tire pressure has dropped.

The system monitors the tire pressure and temperature by measuring the values received from the TPMS sensor fitted to the valve.

The fitted tires are detected by the system automatically. The current tire inflation pressure values are compared with the preset recommended values and are displayed on the control display.

When the low tire pressure warning illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Set the tire pressure using a tire pressure gauge.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The tire pressure monitoring system is only an aid. It is the driver's responsibility to set the recommended tire pressure as per the tire pressure label and suitable for the operating situation.**

**4.10.2 Tire Pressure Display**

The individual pressure and temperature status are displayed for the fitted tire. The tire with low pressure is highlighted in red color.

You can check the current tire pressure information on the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Tires**



1. Recommended tire pressure
2. Current tire temperature
3. Current tire pressure
4. Tire with low pressure
5. Low tire pressure indication
6. Settings

Current pressure and temperature values may vary depending on the vehicle operating conditions and outside temperature.

Recommended tire pressure is also displayed depending on the tire size and loading information entered. The recommended pressure is adjusted immediately if the load status is changed in tire settings.

**Display icons**

Icon	Description
	The warning symbol is illuminated when low tire pressure is detected (Icon is steady)
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction (Icon is flashing)

**⚠ WARNING**

**There is a risk of an accident by losing vehicle control when the vehicle is driven with under-inflated tires. Do not continue driving. When the low tire pressure indicator illuminates on the control display, check and inflate the tire pressure immediately.**

**4.10.3 TPMS Auto-Learning**

Using the control display TPMS auto-learning can be completed.

**INFORMATION**

**Auto-learning will be required if there is any change on TPMS or if there is a tire replacement.**

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Tires**



Follow the below procedure for auto-learning:

Please ensure that the vehicle is in a stationary position for at least 17 minutes after any TPMS or tire change is conducted.

1. Tap on the auto-learning button when it appears on the control display.
2. Start to drive for approximately 10 minutes. Auto-learning takes place over 40 km/h. Until auto-learning is finished, you will see "---" instead of pressure and temperature values.

## 5 High-voltage Battery & Charging

### 5.1 High-voltage Battery Safety

#### 5.1.1 Safety Instructions

##### **⚠ WARNING**

- ***There is a risk of serious injury, burns, or electric shock from high-voltage components. It is recommended that you first choose Togg authorized service for high-voltage battery repair. Never attempt to remove or modify the high-voltage components.***
- ***Never touch the high-voltage components, there is a risk of serious injury. Always assume that the high-voltage battery is charged and all the high-voltage components are energized when the ignition is switched Off.***
- ***If the vehicle or high-voltage battery is damaged, toxic gases or liquids may leak immediately or later. These released gases can also potentially cause fires.***
- ***If exposed to the gases escaping from the high-voltage battery immediately seek medical help as they can be toxic.***
- ***Never touch the fluids leaking from the high-voltage battery. It is recommended to contact Togg authorized service for assistance.***
- ***There is a risk of accident, injury or component damage if unauthorized work is carried out on the vehicle. It is recommended that you first choose Togg authorized service for any work on high-voltage components.***

##### **⚠ ATTENTION**

***If the vehicle's underbody hits the ground, the high-voltage battery may get damaged. It is recommended that you first choose Togg authorized service for the inspection.***

#### 5.1.2 About High-voltage Battery

Your vehicle is powered by a lithium-ion battery pack. The high-voltage battery is controlled by a high-voltage battery management system (BMS). The high-voltage battery supplies high-voltage parts and 12V parts.

The high-voltage battery is located on the vehicle underbody and does not require any maintenance from the vehicle user.

The high-voltage battery undergoes discharge (Approx. 2% State of Charge in 30 days) even when the vehicle is not in use. The discharge rate may vary depending on the environmental conditions and vehicle configuration. In order for the high-voltage battery to achieve the maximum possible service life, it should always be sufficiently charged.

The high-voltage battery must never be allowed to discharge completely, as this situation causes damage to the high-voltage battery life. In the event of high-voltage battery complete discharge, it is recommended you first choose Togg authorized service for further assistance.

#### 5.1.3 High-voltage Battery Care

High-voltage batteries undergo physical and chemical aging and wear processes. This reduces the capacity of the high-voltage battery over its life cycle, depending on usage and environmental conditions. This reduces the maximum possible range and increases charging time, especially as the high-voltage battery ages.

The following measures can be taken to reduce high-voltage battery ageing and wear.

- Prevent high-voltage battery from complete discharge.

#### 5.1.4 Disposing High-voltage Battery

It is recommended you first choose Togg authorized service for high-voltage battery disposal. Please dispose in accordance with local regulations.

### 5.2 Charging Equipment

#### 5.2.1 Safety Instructions

##### **⚠ WARNING**

- ***Only use the mains socket if it has been properly installed and inspected by a qualified electrician.***
- ***Never use a damaged charger cable, there is a risk of fatal electric shock. Always inspect the charging equipment before each use.***
- ***For safety reasons always keep children away from the vehicle being charged.***
- ***There is a risk of fire or short circuit if extension cables or multiple socket outlets are used together with a charging cable. Always connect the charger cable mains socket to mains plug directly.***
- ***Only use the Togg approved charging cable and equipment to charge the high-voltage battery. Always follow the local regulations and standards.***

- **It is recommended to visit Togg authorized service if there is a malfunction in charging equipment. Never try to repair charging equipment yourself.**
- **Always use a suitable charging station and charging cable. There is a risk of fire if incompatible equipment is used to charge the vehicle due to overheating.**

### 5.2.2 Charging Cable

#### Type 2 to type 2 (Mode 3)

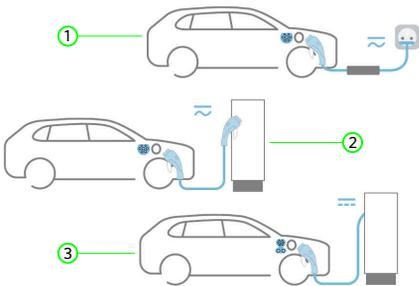


TG02150

This charging cable can be used to charge the high-voltage battery at a special AC charging station. This cable does not need the control box, as the charging station has the residual current device.

## 5.3 Charging Types

### 5.3.1 Overview



TG02852

1. Mode 2 charging
2. Mode 3 charging
3. DC Fast charging/Mode 4 charging

#### 5.3.2 Mode 2

The high-voltage battery of the vehicle can be charged using a domestic power outlet with a maximum 16 A current. If the CEE socket is available, then the high-voltage battery of the vehicle can be

charged with a maximum 32 A current per phase. The electrical wiring and the socket must be tested and fault-free. The power supply at the domestic power outlet uses alternating current to charge the high-voltage battery.

A special charging cable with an IC-CPD is required to use this mode.

While charging with this mode without the CEE socket, longer charging times should be planned than for other charging modes.

#### 5.3.3 Mode 3

The high-voltage battery can be charged using a socket at a designated AC charging station with a maximum 32A current per phase. The power supply at a charging uses alternating current to charge the high-voltage battery. The charging cable might be permanently connected to the charging station. If the charging cable is not available at the charging station, use type 2 to type 2 charging cable provided with the vehicle.

To charge the vehicle at a mode 3 charging station, type 2 connector must be used at the vehicle side and charging station side.

The mode 3 charging type requires less charging time than charging at a domestic power outlet.

#### 5.3.4 DC Fast Charging/Mode 4

The high-voltage battery can be charged at a special DC fast charging station. The DC fast charging uses a higher-rated power supply, which helps to reduce the charging time significantly as compared to other modes. Direct current is used to charge the high-voltage battery.

The charging cable is permanently connected to the charging station.

#### INFORMATION

**The DC charging cable for the vehicle must not be longer than 30 m due to the legal requirements.**

## 5.4 Charging Operation

### 5.4.1 Starting Charging Operation

To start the charging operation, below conditions must be satisfied:

- Drive position is in "P" (Park mode)
- Electric parking brake is activated

Follow the below steps to start the charging operation:

1. Unlock the vehicle and press on the edge of the charging lid to open it.



2. Open the dust cover if charging with DC fast charging.



Or

Connect the mode 2 charging plug to the domestic socket outlet or the mode 3 charging plug to the connection point on the AC charging station.

### INFORMATION

**If charging at DC fast charging station, the cable at the charging station side is non-detachable.**

3. Place the charging cable connector on the charging socket and press it until it is locked correctly.

### ATTENTION

**If charging your vehicle at a charging station follow the instruction mentioned at the charging station.**

The charging process will start automatically once the charging cable is locked.

### Display icons

Icon	Description
	Charging cable plugged (Icon is steady)
	High-voltage battery level low (Icon is steady)
	High-voltage system warning (Icon is steady)
	High-voltage system fault (Icon is steady)

### 5.4.2 Charging Status Display

Charging status can be monitored on the light display equipped with the charging port.

LED	Light Status	Description
	Blinking	Charging
	Static	Fully charged
	Static	Scheduled charging
	Static	Error

The below screen appears when the charger is connected or charging is started on the driver's screen.



1. Charging in progress
2. Estimated driving range
3. Current high-voltage battery State of Charge (SoC)

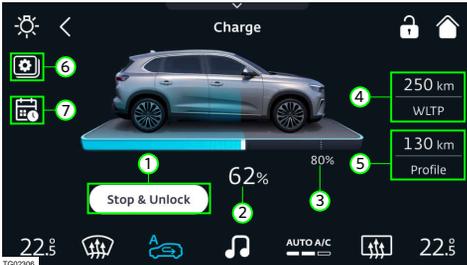
4. Maximum WLTP driving range
5. Target State of Charge (SoC) percentage
6. Charging "Stop and Unlock"

### On control display

Charging status can also be checked on the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls → Charge**



1. Charging "Stop and Unlock"
2. Current high-voltage battery State of Charge (SoC)
3. Target high-voltage battery charge percentage
4. Maximum WLTP driving range
5. Profile specific driving range
6. Charge setting menu
7. Departure plan

### 5.4.3 Ending Charging Operation

The charging cable is automatically locked during the charging process.

#### Unlocking the charging cable during AC charging

- Unlock the vehicle
- Open the door

The AC charging will stop for a while in above conditions. If the charging plug is still inserted in charging port the charging will restart automatically.

#### Unlocking charging cable using the control display

The charging cable will be unlocked when the charging process is stopped using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls → Charge**

- Tap on the "Stop & Unlock" button, to unlock the charging plug.

#### Unlocking the charging cable using the driver's screen

The charging cable will be unlocked when the charging process is stopped using the driver's screen.

- Select the "Stop & Unlock" option using the left steering wheel switch on the driver's screen.

#### Ending charging process

1. Unlock the charging plug and remove it from the charging socket.
2. Close the dust cover if removed.
3. Close the charging lid.
4. Disconnect the mode 2 charging plug from the domestic socket outlet or the mode 3 charging plug from the connection point on the AC charging station.

### INFORMATION

*If charging at DC fast charging station, the cable at the charging station side is non-detachable. Store the cable properly at the designated place.*

### 5.4.4 Charge Settings

#### Limit AC current

#### ⚠ ATTENTION

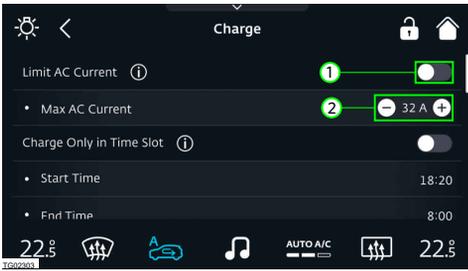
*There is a risk of fire. If the charge current strength is set incorrectly, the electrical circuit can be overloaded and overheated.*

The AC current can be limited when charging the vehicle at a domestic power outlet using the control display.

The set charge current strength has to be checked by a qualified electrician for the electrical circuit. If you are not sure about the approved current strength of the electrical circuit, set the current limit to the lowest level to avoid damage to electrical circuit.

Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls → Charge → Settings**



- Tap on button (1) to activate/deactivate the limit AC current function.
- Tap on the "+" or "-" button (2) to set the max AC current, when the limit AC current function is active.

AC current limit can be set between 1 A and 32 A.

### Charge limit

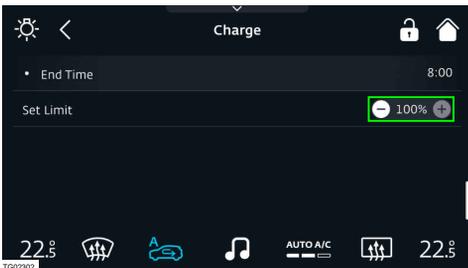
When charging at DC fast charging station, it is recommended to set the charging limit to reduce charging costs. For physical and chemical reasons, the charging speed decreases when the high-voltage battery state of charge approaches 100%.

It is recommended to set the charge limit at 80%.

The charge limit can be set using the control display between 40% to 100%.

Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls → Charge → Settings**



- Tap on the "+" or "-" button to increase or decrease the charge limit.

The charge limit percentage changes in 5% increments.

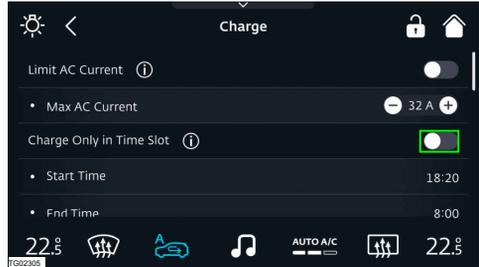
### Charging in a time slot

When charging the high-voltage battery using the AC power outlet, it is possible to set the start and end time for charging operation.

The function can be controlled using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls → Charge → Settings**



1. Tap on the button to activate/deactivate the function.
2. Set the desired start time and end time when the function is active.

### INFORMATION

**The vehicle's high-voltage battery will not be charged out of the set time slot.**

## 5.5 Troubleshooting

### 5.5.1 Manually Unlocking the Charging Cable

If the charging cable is not unlocked automatically after charging operation is ended it can be unlocked manually.

1. Unlock the vehicle and open the hood.
2. Locate the manual release mechanism white or yellow (it may change according to your vehicle production date) ring near the right side bonnet hinge.



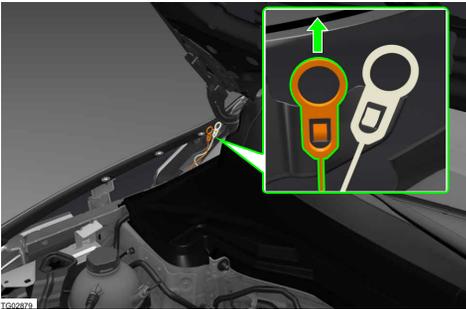
3. Pull the white or yellow (it may change according to your vehicle production date) ring and to unlock the charge cable and reposition the ring to its original position.

Only unlock the charging cable manually when there is a malfunction in the mechanism. It is recommended that you immediately visit a Togg authorized service and have the system checked.

### 5.5.2 Manually Unlocking Charging Lid

If the charging lid is not opening due to malfunction, it can be opened manually.

1. Unlock the vehicle and open the hood.
2. Locate the charging lid manual release orange ring near the right side bonnet hinge.



3. Pull the orange ring and unlock the charging lid and reposition the ring to its original position.

Only unlock the charging lid manually when there is a malfunction in the mechanism. It is recommended that you immediately visit a Togg authorized service and have the system checked.

### 5.5.3 Malfunction in Charging Operation

When charging status light is red LED, it indicates there is a malfunction in the charging operation. (Refer to [5.4.2 Charging Status Display](#) )

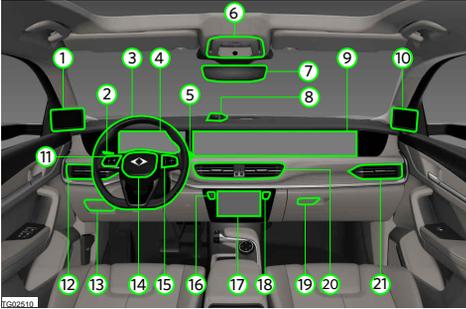
#### **Follow the below procedure:**

1. Unlock the charging plug.
2. Restart the charging operation. (Refer to [5.4.1 Starting Charging Operation](#) )

If the malfunction is not resolved, it is recommended contact a Togg authorized service for further assistance.

## 6 Display & Features

### 6.1 Dashboard Overview



1. Left camera mirror system display (if equipped)
2. Left stalk
3. Steering wheel
4. Driver's screen
5. Right stalk
6. Overhead console
7. Inside rear view mirror
8. Driver infrared camera
9. Main screen
10. Right camera mirror system display (if equipped)
11. Left steering wheel switch
12. Left air vent
13. Fuse box cover
14. Horn pad
15. Right steering wheel switch
16. Start/Stop switch
17. Control display
18. Hazard switch
19. Glove box latch
20. Center air vent
21. Right air vent

### 6.2 Driver's Screen

#### 6.2.1 General Information

##### 6.2.1.1 Overview



The driver's screen is an interactive display which provides useful information to the driver. The driver's screen is designed to display important information about the vehicle's systems and features.

Opening the driver's door will activate the screen to display the information. The multifunction steering wheel switches allows you to scroll through the main menus and submenus. You can access the specific information you want and make selections and adjustments.

The driver's screen is divided into three tiles.

1. Information tile
2. Center tile
3. Functions tile

##### 6.2.1.2 Information tile

Information tile displays the information or important notes that are currently relevant to the vehicle and other helpful information.

The information tile can be accessed to meet personal preferences using the left steering wheel switch.

##### Vehicle statistics

Information tile provides vehicle statistics with respect to "Current Drive" or "Current Trip" or "Last Charge." With the help of left steering wheel switch driver can toggle the information and reset.

It gives travel duration, average speed, distance travel, and average energy consumption since the last reset.

The below table describes icons and description related to vehicle statistics:

Icon	Description
	Duration of travel

	Average energy consumption
	Distance travel
	Average speed

### Notifications

Vehicle system related notifications and pop ups are displayed in the information tile.

The notifications are displayed in order of importance, with the highest priority message being displayed first. After acknowledging the currently displayed notification using the left steering wheel switch other notifications can be checked.

Icon	Description
	Information
	Suggestion
	Service needed
	Warning

### INFORMATION

**Clearing a warning message does not rectify the fault. The associated telltale remains illuminated until the fault is rectified.**

### Notification timeout

If no action is taken on the displayed notification, it will be hidden automatically and stored after a specified time period.

To hide a warning notification, it must be acknowledged by the user using the left steering wheel switch.

Notification type	Timeout period
-------------------	----------------

Information	5 Seconds
Suggestion	10 Seconds
Service needed	10 Seconds
Warning	No timeout

### Checking stored notifications

Acknowledged or hidden notifications are stored in the vehicle system and can be displayed on the control display. Depending on the notification type, further actions can be selected.

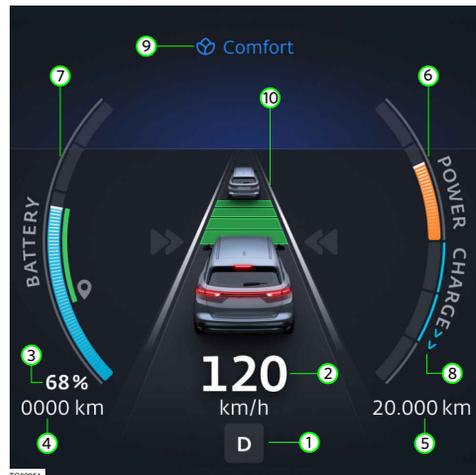
To check stored notifications,

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Page 2 → System Information → More → Message**

### 6.2.1.3 Center tile

Center tile on the driver's screen displays the information related to the speed and high-voltage battery energy status.



1. Drive position
2. Speedometer
3. High-voltage battery State of Charge
4. Profile specific driving range
5. Odometer
6. Power meter

7. High-voltage battery State of Charge meter
8. Recuperation level indicator
9. Drive mode
10. Active safety

#### 6.2.1.4 Functions tile

Functions tile provide the driver with a quick access to use the features using the steering wheel switches.

- **Media:**  
Displays the media information and allows to play, pause or change the track.
- **Phone:**  
Display phone call notification and possible to make a call. When call is received notification appears and desired action can be taken as per user preference.
- **Drive assist mode:**  
Displays driver assist function status and allows to activate/deactivate.
  - Adaptive cruise control
  - Adaptive driver assist (if equipped)
  - Speed limiter
  - Traffic sign speed limit
  - Rush hour pilot (if equipped)

#### INFORMATION

**The driver can activate only one function at a time from the list below:**

- **Cruise control**
- **Adaptive driver assist (if equipped)**
- **Speed Limiter**
- **Adaptive cruise control**

**If one function is activated, the system will automatically deactivate the other if already active.**

- **Lane support:**  
Quick access to lane safety assist function settings.
- **Tire pressure:**  
Displays the tire pressure information.

#### Display icons

The below table describes menu icons in the function tile:

Icon	Description
------	-------------

	Driver assistance
	Media
	Lane safety
	Phone
	Tire pressure

#### Activation/deactivation status

Some items are preceded by an icon to display their state.

Icon	Description
	Function is enabled
	Function is disabled
	Function is active
	Function is inactive

#### 6.2.2 Indicators and Telltales

If any telltale or indicator appears on the driver's screen during the process of vehicle starting or driving, it means that the relevant system is in a certain state or has a fault. Some warning lights will illuminate or flash accompanied with warning tone or prompt message.

When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, check the description and take the corrective actions or it is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service for assistance.

**WARNING**

**Do not ignore any telltale or information messages displayed on the driver's screen. Take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in serious damage to the vehicle, serious injury, or death.**

The below table describes the telltale and its description.

Icon	Description
	Auto hold active (Icon is steady)
	Auto hold failure (Icon is steady)
	When doors are open and gear selector is not in "P". (Icon is steady)
	Low beam deactivated by rain-light sensor (Icon is steady)
	Electric tailgate fault (Icon is steady)
	Acoustic vehicle alerting system error (Icon is steady)
	Seat belt not fastened or error (Icon is steady)
	Seat belt not fastened or error (Icon is flashing)
	Brake fluid level low (Icon is steady)
	Electronic stability control malfunction (Icon is steady)
	Electronic stability control in control (Icon is flashing)

	Electronic stability control is Off (Icon is steady)
	Airbag system error (Icon is steady)
	Front passenger airbag deactivated (Icon is steady)
	Low-voltage battery error (Icon is steady)
	Low-voltage battery state of health low (Icon is steady)
	Light failure (Icon is steady)
	Change brake pads (Icon is steady)
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Advanced emergency braking alert, flashing with warning sound.</li> <li>Collision avoidance is manually disabled or initializing. (Icon is steady)</li> </ul>
	Forward collision warning (Icon is flashing)
	Advanced emergency braking limited performance (Icon is steady)
	Electric power steering error (Icon is steady)
	High-voltage battery level low (Icon is steady)
	Charging cable plugged (Icon is steady)
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction (Icon is flashing)

	Tire pressure system abnormal (Icon is steady)
	Electric parking brake failure (Icon is flashing)
	Electric parking brake engaged or Electronic brake force distribution warning (Icon is steady)
	Intelligent brake booster service warning or regenerative brake control service warning (Icon is steady)
	Engine performance limited warning (Icon is steady)
	Engine performance limited error (Icon is steady)
	Engine system warning (Icon is steady)
	Engine system error (Icon is steady)
	High-voltage system warning (Icon is steady)
	High-voltage system fault (Icon is steady)
	Thermal system error (Icon is steady)
	Thermal system coolant level low (Icon is steady)
	Child presence detection deactivated (Icon is steady)
	Washer fluid level low (Icon is steady)

	Blind spot warning left (Icon is steady)
	Blind spot warning left (Icon is flashing)
	Blind spot warning right (Icon is steady)
	Blind spot warning right (Icon is flashing)
	Adaptive cruise control passive (Icon is steady)
	Adaptive cruise control failure (Icon is steady)
	Adaptive cruise control active but overridden (Icon is flashing)
	Adaptive cruise control active (Icon is steady)
	Accept or reject the recommended speed limit
	Cruise control active (Icon is steady)
	Cruise control active but overridden (Icon is flashing)
	Cruise control standby (Icon is steady)
	Cruise control failure (Icon is steady)
	The adaptive driver assist system's lateral and longitudinal controls are in an active state. (Icon is steady or flashing)

	The adaptive driver assist system's lateral control is active, and longitudinal control is in an override state. (Icon is slow flashing)
	The adaptive driver assist system's lateral control is at the system boundary and the longitudinal control is in an active state. (Icon is fast flashing)
	The adaptive driver assist system's lateral and longitudinal controls are in standby state. (Icon is steady)
	The adaptive driver assist system's lateral and longitudinal controls are in a failure state. (Icon is steady)
	The adaptive driver assist system's lateral control is in failure and longitudinal controls is in an active state. (Icon is steady)
	The adaptive driver assist system's lateral control is in failure and longitudinal control is in a passive state. (Icon is steady)
	The adaptive driver assist system's lateral control is in passive state and longitudinal control is in an active state. (Icon is steady)
	The adaptive driver assist system's lateral control is in passive state and longitudinal control is in an error state. (Icon is steady)
	Intelligent speed limiter active (Icon is steady)
	Intelligent speed limiter active but overridden (Icon is flashing)
	Intelligent speed limiter standby (Icon is steady)
	Intelligent speed limiter failure (Icon is steady)

	Speed limiter active (Icon is steady)
	Speed limiter active but overridden (Icon is flashing)
	Speed limiter standby (Icon is steady)
	Speed limiter failure (Icon is steady)
	Lane safety assist is activated (Icon is steady)
	Lane safety assist is in passive state (Icon is steady)
	Emergency lane keeping is deactivated and Lane departure warning is in passive state. (Icon is steady)
	Lane safety assist failure (Icon is steady)
	Lane safety assist deactivated (Icon is steady)
	Lane safety assist in control (Icon is flashing)
	Emergency lane keeping is deactivated and Lane departure warning is in standby state. (Icon is steady)
	Level 1: Warning take steering wheel control
	Level 2: Warning take steering wheel control The system will be deactivated very soon.
	Speed limit assist function is disabled (Icon is steady)

	Speed limit assist function failure (Icon is steady)
	Icy road (Icon is steady)
	Anti-lock braking system failure (Icon is steady)
	Right turning light active (Icon is flashing)
	Left turning light active (Icon is flashing)
	Accessory mode On (Icon is steady)
	Drive ready state active (Icon is steady)
	Standby mode On
	Rear collision warning (Icon is flashing)
	High beam light assist is activated and recommended On. (Icon is steady)
	High beam active (Icon is steady)
	High beam light assist activated but recommended "Off" or High beam light assist is not activated. (Icon is steady)
	High beam light assist active and Off (Icon is steady)
	Low beam active (Icon is steady)

	High beam light assist error (Icon is steady)
	Position light active (Icon is steady)
	Drowsiness detection unavailable (Icon is steady)
	Drowsiness detection error (Icon is steady)
	eCall (Emergency Call) malfunction (Icon is steady)
	Front fog light active (Icon is steady)
	Parking lights active (left or right) (Icon is steady)
	Rear fog light active (Icon is steady)
	Hill descent control active (Icon is flashing)
	Hill descent control enabled (Icon is steady)
	Hill descent control failure (Icon is steady)
	Cross traffic alert/Brake left
	Cross traffic alert/Brake right
	One pedal drive with hold active (Icon is steady)
	One pedal drive with hold is braking the vehicle. (Icon is steady)



Short-range radar error (Icon is steady)

### High-voltage battery fire warning

A warning message is displayed on the driver's screen, main screen and control display when the system detects fire in the high-voltage battery.



### Door, hood and tailgate warning

The driver's screen displays a warning if any doors, the hood, the tailgate, or the charging lid are open once the vehicle has been unlocked and while the vehicle is in motion.

Example of warning display:



1. Door open (Relevant door graphic is displayed)
2. Hood open
3. Charging lid open
4. Tailgate open

Close all the doors and tailgate tightly until the icon disappears.

## 6.2.3 Operating Driver's Screen

### 6.2.3.1 Overview

#### **⚠ WARNING**

*There is a risk of an accident due to driver distraction. Operate the driver screen when the traffic condition allows you to do so.*



### 6.2.3.2 Operating the information display (1)

- To scroll through the information tile menu, touch "Left" or "Right" on the left steering wheel switch (B).
- To select desired action for notification, touch "Up" or "Down" and press at the "Center" on the left steering wheel switch (B).
- To reset the selected trip information, touch "Down" and press at the "Center."

### 6.2.3.3 Operating the function menu (2)

- To switch between function tile, touch "Left" or "Right" on the right steering wheel switch (A).
- To scroll through the selected function list, touch "Up" or "Down" on the right steering wheel switch (A).
- To select or activate/deactivate the desired function, press at "Center" on the right steering wheel switch (A).
- Use the slider softly to increase/decrease the volume when the media or phone function is active.

Softly press at lower side on the slider to mute the media.

## 6.2.4 Digital Assistant (if equipped)

### **WARNING**

**Do not use digital assistant function in an emergency, your voice may change in stressful situations. The system may not recognize voice and leading to undesired phone call connection.**

Digital assistant function communicates with the driver and provides assistance to complete various task while driving. The function acts on and reacts to voice input.

You can use the digital assistant function to operate the following functions:

- Phone
- Media
- Navigation
- Owner's Manual
- Vehicles functions

### Using digital assistant

Digital assistant function can be used when the following requirements are fulfilled:

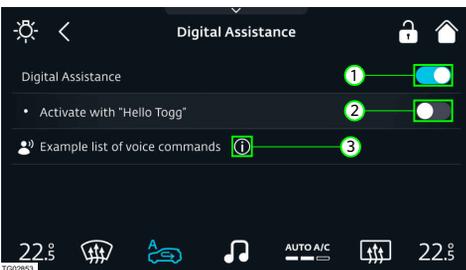
- Vehicle is in ready to drive state
- No active phone call
- Park assist is in passive state

### Digital assistant turn On/Off

Digital assistant function can be turned On/Off using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Page (2) → Digital Assistant**



- Tap on the button (1) to turn On/Off the digital assistant function.
- Tap on the button (2) to activate the digital assistant with "Hello Togg" command, when the digital assistant is active.

- Tap on the information icon (3) to view the voice commands examples.

### Starting digital assistant command

- Press the "Digital assistant" button on the steering wheel.



Or

- Say "Hello Togg."

### Cancelling digital assistant command

When the digital assistant is active and waiting for a voice input:

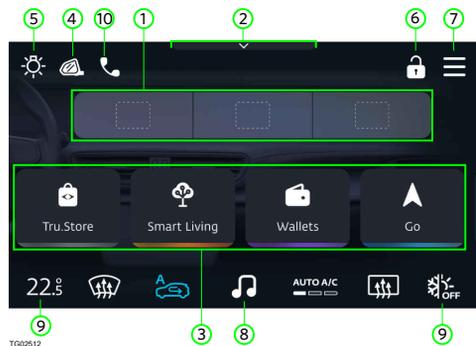
- Press the "Digital assistant" button on the steering wheel.

Or

- Say "Cancel."

## 6.3 Control Screen

### 6.3.1 Control Display Overview

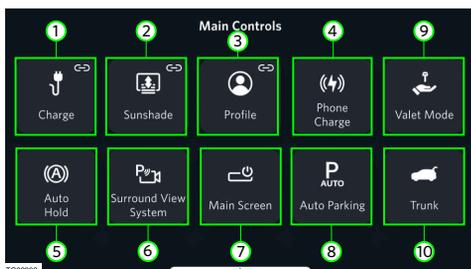


1. Main screen widget  
Set widgets are displayed on the main screen.
2. Main controls  
Swipe down to open main controls menu.

3. Apps on smart device  
Drag and drop selected app to main screen widget.  
Swipe left or right to access more apps.
4. Mirrors settings  
Tap to quickly access mirror settings.
5. Lights settings  
Tap to quickly access all light functions.
6. Central lock  
Tap to Lock/Unlock the vehicle.
7. Menu  
Tap to open vehicle functions menu.
8. Media overlay  
Swipe up to quickly access the media function.
9. Climate control  
Tap on the buttons to access the climate control settings.
10. Phone  
Tap to quickly access phone function.

### 6.3.2 Main Controls

Slide down on the control display to open the main controls menu.



It allows access to the commonly used functions. Additional controls and settings for some of the following features are available on the feature specific tabs.

1. Charge
2. Sunshade
3. Profile
4. Phone charge On/Off button
5. Auto hold On/Off
6. Surround view system On/Off
7. Main screen On/Off
8. Auto parking On/Off

9. Valet mode On/Off
10. Trunk Open/Close

### 6.3.3 Using Control Display

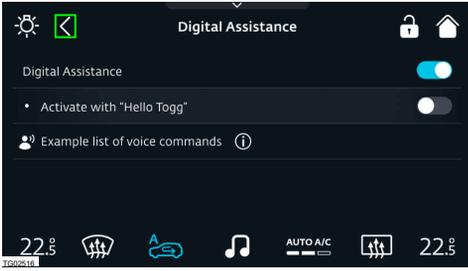
Many of the vehicle functions and equipment features can be controlled and adjusted through the control display. The control display is a touchscreen that responds to taps and other gestures.

Use the following finger gestures to control the control display.

Gesture	Description
	<b>Tap:</b> Tap is used to select an icon or option, activate an application, or change the location inside a map.
	<b>Swipe:</b> Swipe is used to scroll through a list, pan the map, or change page views. Do this by placing a finger on the display and then moving it rapidly up and down or right and left.
	<b>Drag:</b> Drag is used to move applications or to pan the map. To drag the item, it must be held and moved along the display to the new location. This can be done up, down, right, or left. This feature is only available when the vehicle is parked and not in motion.
	<b>Pinch:</b> Pinch is used to zoom out on a map, certain images, or a web page. Place your finger and thumb apart on the display, then move them together.
	<b>Spread:</b> Spread is used to zoom in on a map, certain images, or a web page. Place finger and thumb together on the display, then move them apart.
	<b>Tap and hold:</b> Tap and hold can be used for opening the widget edit page.

#### Back page

To go to the back page in any function or setting, tap on the "Back" button.



## 6.4 Main Screen

### 6.4.1 Overview

#### **WARNING**

***There is a risk of an accident by losing vehicle control. Never operate the main screen while driving. Always follow the traffic regulations.***

The main screen is used to display widgets, such as Navigation, Media and Apps. Some applications are disabled when the vehicle is in motion.

The following types of widgets are shown on the main screen:

1. Permanent widget
2. Temporary widget
3. Quick information widget

The main screen is a touch screen display. To use the touchscreen display, Refer to [6.3.3 Using Control Display](#).

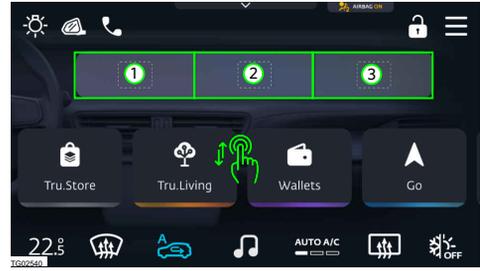
### 6.4.2 Permanent Widget

Depending upon the user selection, widget for the main screen can be selected from the control display. The selected widgets will be displayed on the main screen permanently until the settings are changed.

### 6.4.3 Adding a Widget to the Main Screen

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page**



2. Long press on the desired app and drag to the desired tile location (1, 2 or 3).

### 6.4.4 Temporary Widget

The system automatically displays the temporary widget on the main screen to help the user when the following function is activated:

- Phone
- Park assist

Once the function is deactivated, the previously stored widget will be shown on the main screen.

### 6.4.5 Quick Information Widget

The quick information widget shows the information at a glance, such as a date and time, data connection or device connection.

Some of the common symbols are listed in the table:

Icon	Description
	3G network internet connection available
	Bluetooth active
	Hotspot active
	Advance 4G network internet connection available
	Message/Notification received
	No network signal

	Roaming network available
	Signal strength. Bar indicates strength of signal
	Protected Wi-Fi network available
	Unprotected Wi-Fi network available

**Connected device status display:**

Notification and device status information for the connected device is displayed in quick information widget.

Icon	Description
	Signal strength
	Device battery level
	Connected device available for media
	Connected device available for phone calls
	Missed call notification

**6.4.6 Widget Layout Types**

Different layouts can be applied to the main screen widgets separately depending upon user preference. User can choose between following layouts types:

Icon	Description
	Standard
	Full size with background tile/card

	Floating (Full size without background tile/card)
---	---

**6.4.7 Entering the Text**

When you touch on the main screen or control display for entering a navigation destination or search term, an input field appears.

The text in the field can be entered using the control display.

The below table describes the icons on the text entering the display.

Icon	Description
	Keyboard input
	Delete/Eraser text
	Close text entering display

**Using keyboard**

1. Touch on the input field. A keyboard appears on the control display.
2. Enter the desired text in the field using the keyboard on the control display.

**Using voice command**

1. Touch on the input field. A keyboard appears on the control display.
2. Tap on the voice command button.
3. Speak the desired word. The entered text is displayed on the input field.

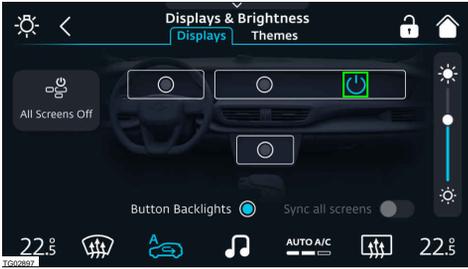
**6.4.8 Activating/Deactivating the Main Screen**

The main screen will be turned On each time when the vehicle is turned On.

To manually turn On/Off the main screen:

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Settings → Displays & Brightness → Displays**



- Tap on the button to turn On/Off the main screen.

Additionally, the main screen can be turned on or off from the main controls page Refer to [6.3.2 Main Controls](#).

## 6.4.9 Rotary Knob

### 6.4.9.1 Overview

The rotary knob functions as a navigator on the main screen. It can be used to select the menu items or widget and perform operations like Enter the setting, Play or Pause media etc. on the main screen.

#### INFORMATION

**When the rotary knob is in static mode it acts as a volume control when rotated and central locking button when pressed.**

### 6.4.9.2 Operating rotary knob

1. Rotate



2. Press



3. Tilt



## 6.4.10 Main Screen Interaction

### 6.4.10.1 Overview

The main screen is a touch screen display which allows clicks and scroll in the widgets. When any widget is added on the main screen, the user has the option to operate it by touch or using the rotary knob.

### 6.4.10.2 Using the rotary knob for widget interaction

1. Tilt down the rotary knob, widget interaction is enabled.
2. Rotate the rotary knob to navigate between the widgets on the main screen. Widget is highlighted while navigation.
3. Press the rotary knob to enter the desired widget or tilt down the rotary knob to cancel the selection.
4. Rotate the knob to navigate inside the selected widget.
5. Press the knob to perform desired action.

#### INFORMATION

**If no action is performed with the rotary knob, it will come to static mode after 15 seconds.**

## 6.4.11 Main Screen Quick Access Overlay

### 6.4.11.1 Overview

When the rotary knob is tilted up the quick access overlay appears on the main screen. This allows to quickly access some of the vehicle function settings without using the control display.

The following function settings can be changed:



TG03827

1. Climate Control
2. Phone
3. Sunshade
4. Brightness
5. Courtesy Light
6. Screen Off

### 6.4.11.2 Using the rotary knob for main screen quick access overlay

1. Tilt up the rotary knob, quick access overlay appears on the main screen.
2. Rotate the rotary knob to navigate through the quick access overlay menu. Function is highlighted while navigation.
3. Press the rotary knob to enter the desired function. Press again to deselect the function.
4. Rotate the rotary knob to make desired changes and press to exit the function.
5. Tilt down the rotary knob, quick access overlay disappears on the main screen.

## 6.5 HMI Settings

### 6.5.1 Display Settings

#### 6.5.2 Time

##### Changing time zone

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Settings → Date**

2. Select to edit "Time Zone."
3. Set the desired time zone.

##### Changing the time format

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Settings → Date**

2. Select the desired time format (24h or 12h).

### 6.5.3 Units and Language

With this function, you can change the unit and language for the menu displays and the navigation. The navigation announcements work for the selected language.

#### INFORMATION

*Do not change to a language you do not understand well as it can be difficult to find your way back through the menu.*

##### Changing units

You can change the units for the following functions using the control display:

- Distance
- Temperature
- Pressure

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Settings → Units & Language**

2. Change the unit of desired functions.

##### Changing the language

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Settings → Units & Language**

2. Change the language to "Tr" or "En".

### 6.5.4 Sound Settings

The sound settings are preset and calibrated using signal processing, but it can be adjusted.

The system volume can be adjusted using the right steering wheel switch or rotary knob or control display. This applies when playing music and the radio or during phone calls and traffic announcements.

The sound settings can be changed using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Settings → Sound**

Or

**Control Display → Media/Radio Page → "Tap on the Sound Setting Icon"**

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following sound settings can be changed:

### Equalizer

This setting will adjust the "Bass", "Low Mid", "Mid", "High Mid" and "Treble" ranges of the audio.

### Balance and Fader

This setting will adjust audio levels from specific speakers in the front/back and left/right of the vehicle.

### Volume control

Volume setting for various vehicle systems such as Media, Phone, and Navigation can be adjusted using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Settings → Sound → Volume Control**



TG02844

- Tap on the button (1) to set the desired audio experience.

The function provides natural immersive and customizable audio experiences for all the listeners.

- Tap on the button (2) to change the centre image position.

Move the position of the vocal image from the nearside door to the centre of the car.

- Tap on the button (3) to set the desired immersion setting.

The function controls the amount of enveloping ambience for a personalised sense of immersion.

- Tap on the button (4) to set the desired Intelli - Q setting.

The function dynamically adjusts the sound to maintain the consistent audio performance in all listening conditions.

- Tap on the button (5) to adjust the media volume.

- Tap on the button (6) to adjust the navigation system volume.

- Tap on the button (7) to adjust the voice assistance volume.

- Tap on the button (8) to activate/deactivate the touch tone.

- Tap on the button (9) to set the desired adjustable chimes volume.

Park sensor and door open chimes will be adjusted according to this setting.

- Tap on the button (10) to set the desired speed dependent volume control setting.

The function adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed.

## 6.5.5 General Settings

### Notifications

Notification alert from the Trumore app can be enabled or disabled.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Settings → Notifications**

## 6.5.6 Screen Touch Sensitivity

The sensitivity of the touch on the control display and the main screen can be changed as per your preference.

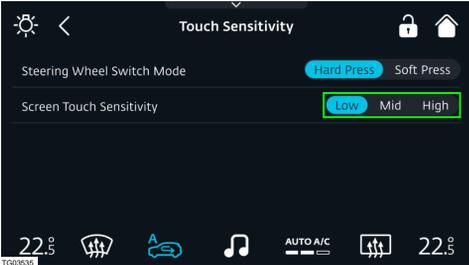
You can choose the screen touch sensitivity at three levels:

- Low
- Mid
- High

Using the control display settings can be changed.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Settings → Touch Sensitivity**



- Tap on the button to set the desired screen touch sensitivity.

## 6.6 Profiles & Customization

### 6.6.1 Profiles

The profiles saves personal settings. If a vehicle is used by multiple drivers, each one can activate their own personal settings and customizations with the Togg account registered email address or Trumore login.

The system allows you to create multiple profiles enabling users to personalize vehicle settings, such as seats and mirrors, exterior light, wiper and window, and balance and fader settings. Each profile will be assigned with the settings that is last used in the vehicle.

Before you begin your journey, you can select a user profile on the main screen and load personalised infotainment and vehicle settings to get better driving experience.

Login or profile activation by Trumore login can already be done while unlocking the vehicle. For this purpose, profile recognition by must be assigned to Trumore login or profile.

When creating, modifying, deleting or editing a Trumore login or profile, the vehicle must travel at maximum walking speed.

For more information about Trumore login, Refer to [1.2 Trumore Login](#).

### Requirement:

To create, change or delete a profile following requirements should meet:

- Driver door is closed
- The vehicle is stationary
- Driver seat belt is fastened

### Profile information protection:

When a new profile is added to the vehicle, access protection is already activated for the profile. The Trumore login password, password and face recognition are available for profile access protection.

The following profile specific information is protected:

- Profile settings and customizations
- Trumore services
- Probable navigation destinations, contacts and messages, media sources and radio stations.

### Display icons

Icon	Description
	Delete
	Locked profile
	Open profile

### 6.6.2 Welcome and Goodbye Screen

When the vehicle is unlocked and is in accessory mode, welcome screen is displayed on the main screen and control display.

Main screen welcome content depends on the following conditions:

- When no profile or Trumore login added:  
An option to add new profile is displayed.
- When profiles are added but key is not linked:  
Stored profiles are offered for selection.  
Additionally, an option to add new profile is displayed.

The following options are displayed on the control display welcome screen:

- Login to profile using Togg account registered email/Trumore login
- Use Guest Profile without logging in
- Change system language (English or Turkish)

When the vehicle is turned Off or is in Standby mode and the driver door is opened, goodbye screen is displayed on the main screen.

The following information is displayed on the main screen:

- Upcoming departure plan details
- Target high-voltage battery state of charge if the departure plan is set
- Target temperature if the departure plan is set
- Antitheft alarm status
- Current high-voltage battery state of charge
- Maximum driving range
- Profile specific driving range

The following options are displayed on the control display:

- Set departure plan
- Set antitheft alarm
- Charge now

## 6.6.3 Managing the Profiles

### 6.6.3.1 Adding the profile

A new profile can be added to the vehicle using the main screen.

1. Turn On the vehicle and shift the gear selector to "P" mode.
2. Tap on the "Add With Email."
3. Follow the instructions to create a new profile.

### 6.6.3.2 Deleting the profile

A profile can be deleted using the control display.

1. Turn On the vehicle and shift the gear selector to "P" mode.
2. Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls → Profile → Manage Profiles**

3. Tap on the delete icon in front of the profile to be deleted.
4. Tap on "Yes" and enter your current password to delete the profile.

### 6.6.3.3 Changing the profile password

Profile can be changed using the control display.

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls → Profile → Settings**

2. Tap on the "Change Password."
3. Enter the current password and follow the instruction on the control display to change the password.

A message "Your Password Changed Successfully" appears on the control display after successful password change.

### 6.6.4 Activating the Profile

#### **WARNING**

**Activating a profile may trigger driver's seat position adjustment stored for the profile, there is a risk of becoming trapped. Always keep the seat movement area free while activating the profile or adjusting the seats.**

#### **INFORMATION**

**If the profile is activated when the vehicle is in motion then the driver's seat position will not be adjusted.**

When you log in with the Trumore login or the profile in the vehicle, the stored settings are activated. If the profile is not detected when unlocking the vehicle, it can be manually activated.

When the vehicle is unlocked and is in accessory mode you can select and activate profile using the below option:

#### **Login with Trumore login**

1. Select "Add with email."
2. Enter your Togg account registered email address/Trumore login.
3. Set new password for your profile.
4. Configure the profile recognition e.g. Face recognition.

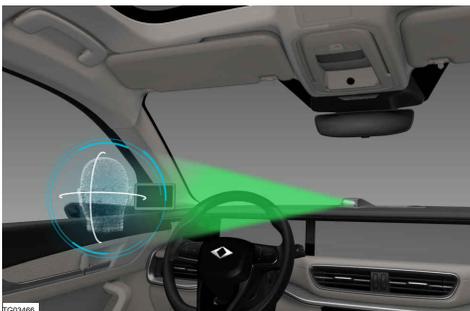
Profile recognition can be set or changed later on from settings.

## 6.6.5 Face Recognition

### 6.6.5.1 Overview

Face recognition uses facial recognition to identify the driver and then loads a matching user profile. You can unlock your profile with a facial scan.

### 6.6.5.2 Adding the face recognition



1. Close the driver's door or fasten the driver's seat belt.
2. Look at the driver infrared camera for about five seconds and then move your head in a circle.

A message on the control display shows whether the face recognition was successful or not.

When the face recognition is set for the profile, you can unlock profile with the facial scan without entering the profile password.

### 6.6.5.3 Removing the face recognition

The added facial recognition data for the profile can be removed using the control display.

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls → Profile → Settings**

2. Tap on the "Face Recognition" button and follow the instructions on the control display.

A message "Recognized Face Removed" appears on the control display after successfully removing the facial recognition data.

### 6.6.5.4 Limitations of face recognition

Profile unlocking with the face recognition may not work properly in the following cases:

- If the driver infrared camera is obstructed by body parts (hands or arms), objects, condensation, mist or contaminated by non-transparent dust, or dirt.

- If the driver's face is covered with clothing, hair fringe, a large hat or a face mask.

## 6.6.6 Valet Mode

### 6.6.6.1 Overview

In the valet mode, the vehicle acceleration and certain vehicle function is limited to reduce the risk of damage to and improper use of the vehicle. This mode can be used when the vehicle is handed over to valet service for parking.

When the valet mode is activated, the following limitations are applied:

- Maximum vehicle speed is limited to 40 km/h.
- Certain Trumore functions cannot be used.
- Vehicle settings cannot be changed.
- Personal data cannot be accessed.

The following information can be monitored on the main screen when the valet mode is activated:

- The number of passwords attempted to unlock the valet mode
- Total driving time in the valet mode
- Total distance travelled in the valet mode

### INFORMATION

**For deactivating the valet mode, password is required.**

### 6.6.6.2 Activating the valet mode

1. Turn On the vehicle and shift the gear selector to "P" mode.
2. Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls → Profile → Settings**

Or

**Control Display → Main Controls**

3. Tap on the "Valet Mode" button.

A message "Valet Mode Activated" appears on the control display after successful valet mode activation.

### 6.6.6.3 Deactivating the valet mode

1. Turn On the vehicle and shift the gear selector to "P" mode.
2. Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls → Profile → Settings**

Or

**Control Display → Main Controls**

3. Tap on the "Valet Mode" button.
4. Enter the current profile password to deactivate the valet mode.

### INFORMATION

*The valet mode remains active after changing the profile or turning the vehicle On or Off and must be intentionally deactivated by an authorized user.*

## 6.6.7 Guest Profile

### 6.6.7.1 Overview

The guest profile can be activated and changed by anyone and can store settings in the vehicle. It is recommended to use the guest profile temporarily, as the settings can be changed by other users.

The guest profile is automatically activated in the following cases:

- A Trumore login has not yet been added or a profile has not yet been created.

The key used to unlock the vehicle has no Trumore login or profile assigned.

### 6.6.7.2 Activating the guest profile

The guest profile can be selected manually when the welcome screen is active.

On control display:

- Tap on the guest button to activate the guest profile.

On main screen:

- Tap on the guest button to activate the guest profile.

### 6.6.7.3 Guest profile limitations

- The guest profile name cannot be changed.
- A password cannot be assigned to a guest profile.
- Driver detection cannot be assigned to a guest profile.

## 6.6.8 Vehicle Factory Defaults

This function will delete all profile settings to their factory default.

1. Turn On the vehicle and shift the gear selector to "P" mode.
2. Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls → Profile → Settings**

3. Tap on the "Set Factory Default" button to reset all profile settings.

## 6.7 Connections

### 6.7.1 Safety Instructions

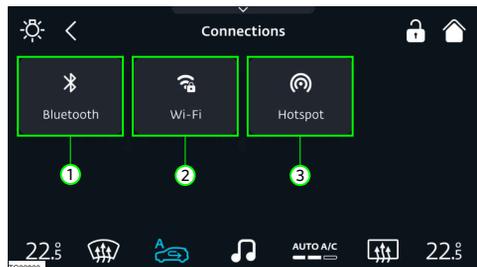
#### ⚠ WARNING

***There is a risk of an accident by losing vehicle control or distraction when using communication devices while driving. Only operate the system or devices if the traffic condition allows you to do so. If necessary, stop the vehicle and operate the system or devices.***

### 6.7.2 General Information

You can connect the mobile or communication devices to the vehicle using various types of connections. Depending on the device and function you wish to use, a connection type can be selected.

Paired devices are automatically recognized and connected to the vehicle.



1. Bluetooth
2. Wi-Fi
3. Hotspot

Select relevant function to change the settings.

## 6.7.3 Bluetooth

### 6.7.3.1 Overview

You can pair a Bluetooth enabled phone to the vehicle to make calls, send/receive text messages, wirelessly play media from the vehicle, or connect the vehicle to the Internet.

Two Bluetooth devices can be connected to the vehicle at the same time, but only one device can be used for wireless playback. The most recent paired device will be marked as a primary device. It is possible to change the primary device under Bluetooth settings.

### 6.7.3.2 Connecting the device

The devices first need to be paired with the vehicle with a verification process to connect them with the vehicle.

The pairing procedure can be done from the device or vehicle.

#### Pairing from the vehicle:

Follow the below procedure to pair a device to the vehicle.

1. Turn On Bluetooth on your device and make your phone visible/discoverable.
2. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Connections → Bluetooth**

3. Turn On Bluetooth. Available devices in the range are displayed on the control display.
4. Select the device to be connected.
5. Confirm that the PIN/verification code on your device matches the one shown on the display.
6. After successful verification, your device is paired.

#### Pairing from the device:

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Connections → Bluetooth**

2. Make sure to enable the "Visible to nearby devices".
3. Turn On Bluetooth on your device and search for the vehicle's name in the list.
4. Select the vehicle's name from the list.

5. Confirm that the PIN/verification code on your device matches the one shown on the display.
6. After successful verification, your device is paired.

### 6.7.3.3 Disconnecting the device

The device can be disconnected by:

- Deactivating the Bluetooth on the device.
- Deactivating the vehicle Bluetooth.
- When the device is out of the range of the vehicle, it will be automatically deactivated.

### 6.7.3.4 Managing the connected devices

Phones or other devices in the list of paired Bluetooth devices can be removed.

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Connections → Bluetooth**

2. Tap on manage devices, list of paired devices is displayed.
3. Tap the name of the device you would like to remove.
4. Tap on the delete button and confirm, the selected device is removed.

#### INFORMATION

*If the number of paired devices in the list is more than 20, the new device cannot be connected to the vehicle. If required, remove the paired devices to connect a new device.*

## 6.7.4 Wi-Fi

### 6.7.4.1 Overview

Wi-Fi is available as a data connection method and is often faster than cellular data networks. Connecting to Wi-Fi is especially useful in areas with limited or no cellular connectivity. To ensure fast, reliable delivery of software and map updates, it is recommended to leave your vehicle connected to a Wi-Fi network whenever possible (for example, if parked in your garage overnight).

### 6.7.4.2 Connecting to Wi-Fi

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Connections → Wi-Fi**

2. Turn on the Network. Available network list is displayed.
3. Select the network you want to connect. Enter the password and confirm.
4. Your vehicle is connected to the network. Mark the check box to auto join the network whenever it is available.

### 6.7.4.3 Managing the networks

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Connections → Wi-Fi**

2. Tap on manage networks, list of networks is displayed.
3. Tap the name of the network you would like to remove.
4. Tap on the delete button and confirm. The selected network is removed.

### 6.7.4.4 Connect to other

It is also possible to connect Wi-Fi using the "connect to other" function if MAC address, network name and password are available.

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Connections → Wi-Fi**

2. Tap on the connect to other.
3. Enter the network name, password and MAC address.
4. Tap on the join button to connect Wi-Fi network.

## 6.7.5 Hotspot

### 6.7.5.1 Overview

You can create a Wi-Fi Hotspot in your vehicle and allow compatible devices to connect and access the internet.

### 6.7.5.2 Activating/Deactivating the hotspot

Your vehicle hotspot can be activated/deactivated using the control display.

The number of devices connected to the hotspot is displayed on the screen.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Connections → Hotspot**

To activate/deactivate the hotspot, tap on the Hotspot button.

### 6.7.5.3 Changing the name and password of the hotspot

Follow the below steps to change the name and password of the vehicle hotspot:

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Connections → Hotspot**

2. Press on the current hotspot name.
3. Enter your required hotspot name and save.
4. Press on the current password.
5. Enter your required password and save.

### 6.7.5.4 Connecting the device

The devices can be connected to the hotspot by scanning the QR code or using the Hotspot Name and password.

#### To connect using a QR code:

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Connections → Hotspot**

2. On your device, switch On Wi-Fi and go to Wi-Fi settings.
3. Using the QR code scanner, scan the QR code on the control display.
4. Your device is connected.

#### To connect using the Hotspot name and password:

1. Go to Hotspot on the control display.
2. On your device, switch On Wi-Fi.
3. Select the hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
4. Enter the password when prompted.
5. Your device is connected.

## 6.8 Togg Widgets

### 6.8.1 Safety Instructions

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- **There is a risk of an accident by losing vehicle control.**
  - Drivers should never text message, access social media, check emails, or search the internet while driving. Using any of these features while driving diverts attention from the road.
  - Drivers should talk on the phone only when it is safe to do so and when such use does not distract the driver from the road.
- **The functioning of cardiac pacemakers or hearing aids may be impaired when the phone is in use. Check with a doctor or the device's manufacturer whether any such devices that the vehicle's occupants are using are sufficiently protected against high-frequency energy.**
- **Even when using the Bluetooth hands-free feature, using the phone while driving is dangerous. The use of a phone diverts the driver's attention from the traffic situation. When using the phone, stop at an appropriate place where other vehicles are not endangered or inconvenienced.**
- **Always store the phone securely. In an accident, loose items can cause injury.**

### 6.8.2 Media Player

Tap the Audio widget or swipe up the media overlay on the control display to view the active media source. Examples of available sources include FM, Bluetooth, and media apps.

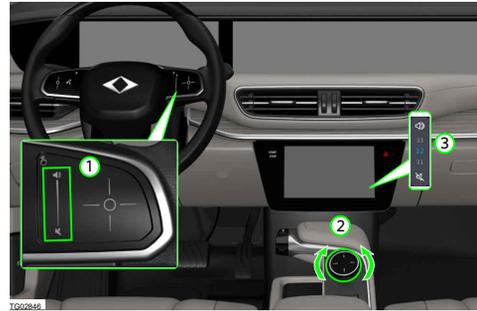
Volume and media selection can be controlled by using the control display or the right steering wheel switch or the connected device.

#### **⚠ ATTENTION**

**When using media devices such as USB and mobile devices, consider the source. Untrusted media devices could contain files that affect system operation or performance and should be avoided.**

#### **Volume**

When media is playing, or a call is in progress, you can control the volume with following options:



1. Right steering wheel switch
2. Rotary knob
3. Slider on the control display

For more volume settings, Refer to [6.5.4 Sound Settings](#).

#### **Accessing media with Bluetooth**

You can play music from the paired Bluetooth device.

1. Connect the device to vehicle with Bluetooth. (Refer to [6.7.3.2 Connecting the device](#))
2. Go to:

**Control Display → Media → Source**

3. Select the paired Bluetooth device.
4. Play the media on the connected device. Media will begin to play.

#### **Accessing media with the internet**

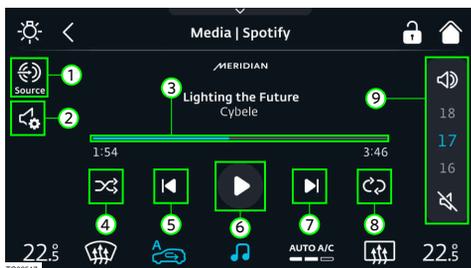
When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, it is also possible to access music services via apps.

1. Connect the vehicle to the internet. (Refer to [6.7.4.2 Connecting to Wi-Fi](#))
2. Go to:

**Control Display → Media → Source**

3. Open the desired App to play the media. Media will begin to play.

## Media Controls



1. Media Source
  - Tap to select the desired media source.
2. Sound Settings
  - Tap to change the sound settings. (Refer to [6.5.4 Sound Settings](#) )
3. Track Position
  - The bar shows the current playback position in the track.
4. Shuffle
  - When this function is switched On, all tracks in the selected playlist will play in random order.
5. Seek Backward
  - Tap to select previous media or track.
  - Tap and hold to rewind within a track.
  - Tap after 4 seconds to restart the selected media or track.
6. Play/Pause
  - Tap to play or pause the current media source.
7. Seek Forward
  - Tap to select next media or track.
  - Tap and hold to fast forward a track.
8. Repeat (Off/Playlist/Track)
  - Tap to repeat the selected track or playlist continuously in loop or turn Off the repeat.
9. Volume Control
  - Set the desired volume or mute the media.

## 6.8.3 Phone

### Pairing

A Bluetooth-enabled mobile device must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See the mobile device manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the device.

For more information on pairing, Refer to [6.7.3.2 Connecting the device](#) .

### Making a call using contacts and recent calls

Calls can be made through the Bluetooth system using personal cell phone contact information for all cell phones that support the Phone Book feature.

The contacts menu accesses the phone book stored in the cell phone, if phone book access is allowed while pairing the phone. The recent menu accesses the recent call list from your cell phone.

### Using contacts

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Phone → "Contacts" or "Recents"**

2. The contacts list can be searched by touching the "Search" icon. Scroll on the control display through the list of names.
3. Touch the desired contact number to call.

### Using recents

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Phone → Recents**

2. Tap the name or number to call.

### Making a call using the keypad

To make a call by dialing the numbers:

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Phone → Keypad**

2. Enter a phone number.
3. Tap "Call" icon on the control display to start dialing the number.

### Accepting or declining a call

When an incoming call is received, the infotainment system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

### Accepting a Call

- Use the right steering wheel switch to select "Accept Call" icon to accept a call.
- Tap "Accept Call" icon on the control display or main screen to accept a call.

### Declining a Call

- Use the right steering wheel switch to select "End Call" icon to decline a call.
- Tap "End Call" icon on the control display or main screen to decline a call.

### Ending a Call

- Use the right steering wheel switch to select "End Call" icon to end a call.
- Tap "End Call" icon on the control display or main screen to end a call.

### Managing calls

Two calls can be taken on the same phone. Notification is given when a second call is received. When accepting a second call, the first call is automatically put on hold.

Alternatively, a second call can be dialled using the control display or main screen.

1. Tap on the "Add call" icon.
2. Tap on the "Contacts" to display the list of saved contacts or tap on the "Keypad" icon to enter the number.

### Transfer call

When the phone call is received, the source (Vehicle or Mobile) of speaker can be changed using this function.

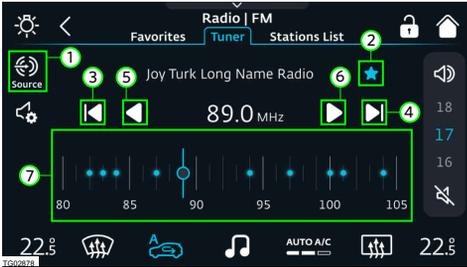
- Tap "Transfer to vehicle" or "Transfer to mobile" icon on the control display to transfer the call.

### Display icons

Icon	Description
	Accept call or Make a call
	End call or Decline call
	Missed call

	Add calls
	Favourite contacts
	Hold
	Incoming call
	Outgoing call
	Transfer to mobile
	Transfer to vehicle
	List
	Mute
	Keypad
	Merge calls
	Swap calls

## 6.8.4 Radio



You can receive available radio stations on different frequency bands and store your favorites to station for main controls. The radio supports the FM and DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) frequency ranges.

### Playing radio

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Media → Source → Radio**

2. Tap on the button (1) to select source "FM" or "DAB".
3. Select the desired station from "Favorite" or "Tuner" or "Stations List".

### Searching and selecting station

Different radio stations are available depending on the selected frequency band.

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Media → Source → Radio → Tuner**

2. Tap on the button (5) or (6).

Or

Turn the rotary knob clockwise to increase or counterclockwise to decrease the radio station frequency.

Or

Slide or tap your finger anywhere on the scale (7) to select a radio station.

### Seek

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Media → Source → Radio → Favorites or Tuner or Stations List**

2. Tap on the button (3) or (4). The previous or next station from the list of stations is played.

### Changing station

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Media → Source → Radio → Favorites or Tuner or Stations List**

2. Tap on the button (5) or (6) to change the station. The previous or next station from the list of stations is played.

### Storing a station as a favorite

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Media → Source → Radio → Tuner or Stations List**

2. Tap on the button (2) to store the station as favorite.

### Managing favorite stations

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Media → Source → Radio → Favorites**

2. Press on the button (2) to remove the station from favorite.

### Changing station name

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Media → Source → Radio → Stations List**

2. Long press on the desired station. Name edit option will appear.

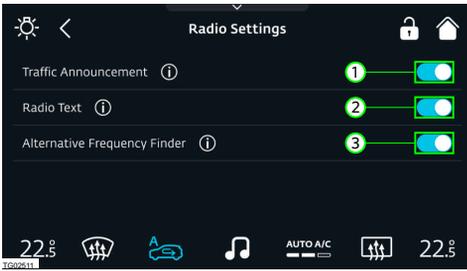
3. Set the desired name and save.

### Radio Settings

Radio settings can be adjusted using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Settings → Radio**



### Traffic announcement

The traffic announcement function monitors the reports from a set traffic news station and automatically outputs them during radio operation or media playback.

#### Activating/Deactivating traffic announcement

To activate/deactivate, tap on the "Traffic announcement" button (1).

#### Radio text

Program information (for example, general text messages, artist, composer, and song) is displayed on the display.

#### Activating/Deactivating radio text

To activate/deactivate, tap on the "Radio text" button (2).

#### Alternative frequency finder

When an alternative frequency finder is activated, the radio automatically switches to a new station when the previous one can no longer be received.

Automatic changeover is only possible if the corresponding station's signal is available in adequate quality and the IDs of the station match.

#### Activating/Deactivating alternative frequency finder

To activate/deactivate, tap on the "alternative frequency finder" button (3).

### 6.8.5 Owner's Manual

You can access the Owner's Manual using the control display. The Owner's Manual periodically updates with the latest information as long as the vehicle has internet connectivity.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Owner's Manual**

For safety reasons, the Owner's Manual is deactivated while driving.

### INFORMATION

**You can also view the Owner's Manual with the Trumore App.**

### 6.8.6 Navigation (Go)

#### 6.8.6.1 Overview

### WARNING

- **Operating the HMI system and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. If necessary, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.**
- **The driver is responsible for staying alert, driving safely, and for being in control of the vehicle at all times, relative to the prevailing conditions. The driver is responsible for determining the safety of the route suggested by the navigation system. The navigation system may not function properly in all circumstances.**

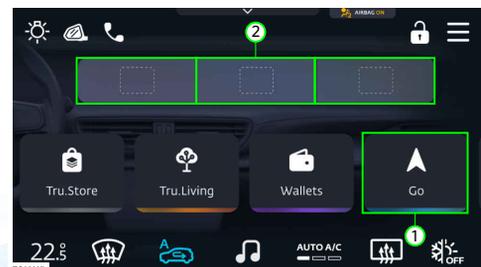
In the Togg smart device, "Go" application provides you location-based services that allows you to reach your destination with the best route considering traffic conditions or alternative routes.

After opening the "Go" application for the first time, the application will always open in full map view displaying the vehicle's current location. At the beginning, the search bar also appears on the screen.

#### 6.8.6.2 Launching Go application

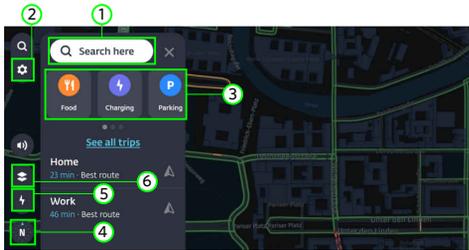
1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page**



2. Drag and drop the Go application (1) on the free widget area (2). The Go application is launched on the main screen.

### Map overview



TG02892

1. Search here tab
2. Map settings
3. Point of interests
4. Map orientation
5. Reachable area with current charge
6. Satellite map view

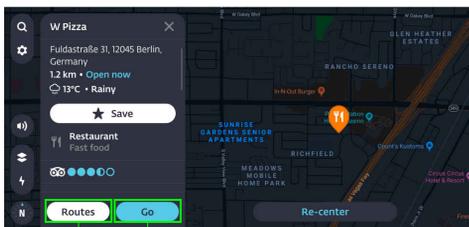
After launching the Go application for the first time, map can be displayed in the dark theme.

To change the map theme, go to:

**Main Screen → Go Application → Settings**

### 6.8.6.3 Selecting destination

After "Go" application is opened, destination can be entered using the following options:



TG02890

### Search bar

1. Tap on the "Search here" and enter the desired location/address/POI or geo-coordinate. Search results are listed and displayed on the main screen.
2. Select the desired destination from the list.

3. Alternative routes can be listed by tapping on the "Routes" button (1)

Or,

Tap on the "Go" button (2) to activate route guidance and the map is displayed.

### Point of Interest categories

Points of Interest (POI) categories such as Food, Charging and Parking can be selected and added as destinations.

1. Tap on the POI Categories, such as "Food," "Charging" and "Parking." A list of available POIs nearby is displayed.
  2. Select the desired POI.
  3. Alternative routes can be listed by tapping on the "Routes" button
- Or,
- Tap on "Go" to activate route guidance and the map is displayed.

In POI details card, address, status, and weather conditions of destination POI can be observed.

### 6.8.6.4 Traffic

#### Routing with traffic

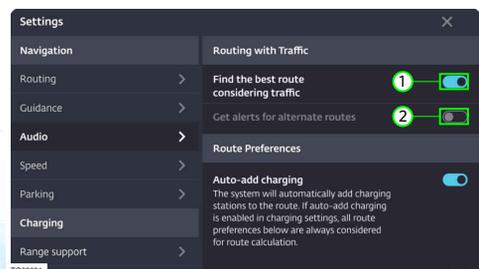
"Routing with Traffic" feature allows to find the best route option considering the traffic conditions. Traffic conditions on roads other than the highways, for instance secondary roads and urban streets, are also displayed. Also, navigation system offers alternative routes during the guidance with better traffic conditions or arrival times.

#### Activating/deactivating routing with traffic

When the Go application is active, routing with traffic feature can be activated/deactivated.

1. Go to:

**Main Screen → Go Application → Settings → Navigation → Routing → Routing with Traffic**



TG02891

2. Tap on the button (1) to activate or deactivate the routing with traffic feature.

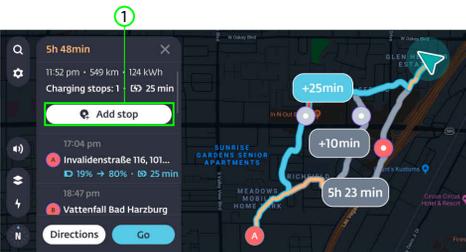
Additionally, you can get alerts for alternative routes.

- Tap on the button (2) to activate or deactivate the feature.

Alternative routes are displayed on the main screen during the active route guidance. Any alternative route can be selected and navigation system reroutes according to the choice of the user.

### 6.8.6.5 Add stops

You can enter additional destinations during active route guidance. More than 10 stops can be entered for one trip.



TG02889

#### To add an additional stop:

1. On the active route guidance, tap on the ETA card.
2. Tap on the "Add Stop" button (1). Search bar appears.
3. Tap on the "Search here" and enter new address/POI/location.
4. Select the destination from search results and tap on the "Add Stop."

or

Replace the current destination by tapping on the "Reroute" button.

#### Arriving at a way point

When approaching a way point, the system will display a destination arrival view on radar with a flag icon and the guidance widget shows "You have reached your way point." To continue to the next destination, tap on the "Close" button on the display.

If the vehicle passes the way point or gets out of the current route, the system will automatically reroute back to this way point. At the same time, it will show the next way point address so the current way point can be skipped and active route guidance can resume to the next way point or destination.

#### Editing way point

When way points are added during active route guidance, the system allows a stop to be deleted or reordered.

1. Tap on the "Edit Route" button.



TG02888

2. Edit the route by using the buttons (1) and (2).
3. Tap on the button (3) or (4) to update or cancel the changes done on active route guidance.

### 6.8.6.6 Map

Road network attributes are streamed over cloud for map information. Attributes include information such as street names, street addresses, and turn restrictions. A detailed area includes all major highways, service roads, and residential roads. The detailed areas include Point of Interests (POIs) such as restaurants, airports, banks, hospitals, police stations, gas stations, tourist attractions, and historical monuments.

The navigation system provides full route guidance in the detailed map areas. Country-specific map content can be downloaded from the "Settings" menu.

#### Map orientation

Tap on the map orientation button on the map to change the map orientation.

The following orientations are available:

- 3D map view
- 2D map view
- North-up view
- 2D map entire route overview

#### Map gestures

Use the following gestures on the map to adjust the map scale and display options:

- Pinch to zoom in or out
- Pan the map

### 6.8.6.7 Map settings

Several navigation settings can be changed using the main screen as per the user preference.

Go to:

**Main Screen → Go Application → Settings**

Following settings can be updated under the settings menu:

- Navigation
  - Routing
  - Guidance
  - Audio
  - Speed
  - Parking
- Charging
  - Range Support
  - Comfort Zone
  - Connector Type and Speed
  - Provider
- Map
  - Map Display
  - Offline Maps
- General
  - Language
  - Units
  - Appearance
  - OSS Notices
  - About
  - Data Privacy

### 6.8.7 Screen Saver

You can select the screen saver widget to display the screen saver on the main screen. (Refer to [6.4.3 Adding a Widget to the Main Screen](#) )

The screen saver widget layout cannot be changed.

The below are the available screen savers:

- Clock and Date:  
It displays analog or digital clock with date on the main screen.
- Weather:  
It displays weather information with respect to the current vehicle location.
- Graphic (Togg 1 or Togg 2):

It displays static graphic depending upon selection.

### Configuring the screen saver widget:

When the screen saver widget is selected on the main screen,

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page**

2. Tap on the screen saver widget.
3. Choose the desired screen saver.

### 6.8.8 Cluster Duplicate

Cluster duplicate displays some of the driver's screen information on the main screen. (Refer to [6.4.3 Adding a Widget to the Main Screen](#) )

The following information can be displayed in this widget.

- Cluster information:  
It displays the recuperation level, power meter, and battery State of Charge.
- G-force meter:  
It displays the magnitude of the forces that are applied to the vehicle occupants in longitudinal and transverse directions while driving.
- Speed meter:  
It displays the current vehicle speed.
- Outside temperature:  
It displays the outside air temperature.
- Inclinator:  
It displays the roll (lateral inclination) and pitch (longitudinal inclination) values of the vehicle in degree (°).
- Compass:  
It displays the direction of vehicle travel with reference to the true north.  
Eight different directions are shown: N (north), NE (north-east), E (east), SE (south-east), S (south), SW (south-west), W (west) and NW (north-west).

Example of cluster duplicate widget:



Different configuration with cluster information can be selected to display on the cluster duplicate widget.

### Configuring the cluster duplicate widget:

When the cluster duplicate widget is selected on the main screen,

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page**

2. Tap on the cluster duplicate widget.
3. Select the desired configuration to display with cluster information.

### 6.8.9 Journey Data

Journey data widget displays the information about the energy statistics and driving style. (Refer to [6.4.3 Adding a Widget to the Main Screen](#) )



1. Driven distance
2. Average consumption
3. Average driving speed
4. Maximum WLTP driving range
5. Profile specific driving range

Depending upon the user selection the journey data can be displayed since:

- Last charging:  
Displays energy statistics since last charging.
- Current drive:

Displays energy statistics for current drive.

- My journey:  
Displays energy statistics for specific journey or route.

The journey data can be displayed in the form of numbers or graph depending upon user selection.

### Configuring the journey data widget:

When the journey data widget is selected on the main screen,

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page**

2. Tap on the journey data widget.
3. Choose the desired view (Number or Graph) and/or the energy statistics (Last charge or Current Drive or My Journey).

### 6.8.10 Tru.Store

Tru.Store helps to find and install or uninstall apps on the vehicle system. It provides collection of approved apps (Third-party apps) to use on the vehicle system.

#### App Categories:

- Control display only:  
These apps can only be used on the control display.
- Control display app with widgets:  
These apps use the control display but also have a widget that can be opened on the main screen. But opening or closing these apps on the control display does not affect main screen behavior e.g. Journey data, Media.
- Main screen only:  
These apps can only be opened on the main screen e.g. Third-party apps (YouTube).
- Dual screen:  
These apps use both the main screen and control display at the same time when opened. When the app is closed on the control display it also disappears from the main screen e.g., Phonebook.
- Dual screen apps with widgets:  
These apps use both the main screen and control display at the same time when opened and have widgets e.g., Navigation (Go).

## 6.9 Software Updates

### 6.9.1 Overview

#### ⚠ WARNING

***There is a risk of system malfunction or limited functionality of some features including safety systems. Do not attempt to drive the vehicle when the software is being installed.***

#### INFORMATION

***The software installation time is dependent on the content of the update and connection quality.***

#### INFORMATION

***Software updates may be required from time to time for the mechanical parts of the Smart Device and on-board applications. It is mandatory to have these software updates done within the periods specified by Togg in order to ensure your Smart Device having high-level technological hardware keeps providing the functions, benefit and comfort you expect from it. Mandatory updates to the standard hardware of smart device will be provided free of charge while the updates related to 3rd Party Applications and hardware that is subject to any subscription may require a specific payment.***

Togg updates your vehicle's software wirelessly and constantly provides new features. This gives you continued access to new features and improvements.

The system provides notification on the driver's screen when a software update is available.

It is recommended to install the new software update as soon as it becomes available to avoid the risk that may be associated with the old software. In the event of problems with the software update, contact Togg customer support for assistance.

#### Requirements to install updated software

The below-listed requirements must be fulfilled to install the software successfully.

- Active internet connection
- Vehicle is stationary
- No system malfunction is detected

#### Checking software update

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Page 2 → System Information**

2. Tap on "Check for Updates." The available update is displayed on the control display.

### 6.9.2 Software Update Settings

The software update settings can be changed using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Page 2 → System Information**



#### Software download preference

- A. Manual download

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Page 2 → System Information**

2. Tap on the button (3) to check for updates. The available update is displayed on the control display.
3. Select the desired option "Accept/Reject" to download the software manually.

- B. Automatic download

The software updates are automatically downloaded in the background when the function is active.

- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the automatic download function.
- Tap on the button (2) to set the desired network preference for downloading the software, when automatic download is active.

#### INFORMATION

- ***Downloading will be interrupted if the vehicle is turned Off and is resumed automatically once the vehicle is operational or an internet connection is established.***

- **If the software download is failed, tap on the "Restart Download" button to download the software again.**

### Installing the software update

#### INFORMATION

- **Always read the software release notes before starting the installation process so that you know how the vehicle and its functions are affected.**
- **While software installation, the vehicle will be locked and vehicle functions (including some safety systems) may be limited or disabled. If you need to enter the vehicle, you must use the mechanical key. The anti-theft alarm may not be available during installation. Bear this in mind when scheduling the update.**
- **Do not start software installation when the vehicle is connected to DC fast charger.**
- **During software installation, plugging in the charging cable is not recommended. The vehicle will not charge during the software installation.**

The installation of the software update may take up to 150 minutes. Before starting installation, make sure that the vehicle is charged to at least 35%. When the software is completely downloaded, a "Ready for installation" notification will pop up in the notification panel.

Successful software installation is displayed on the control display. The vehicle can be operated normally after successful software installation.

### 6.9.3 Failed Software Update

In rare cases, an error can occur during the installation. If software installation is failed, an error message "Update Failed" will be displayed on the control display.

The system automatically attempts to restore the previous version. If it is not possible to restore previous version, control units will no longer function or will not function correctly in the event of a critical installation error. Do not use the vehicle. It is recommended to contact a Togg authorized service for further assistance as they have necessary tools.

### 6.9.4 Checking Software Release Notes

Togg strongly recommends that all users read the release notes for every software update. They can contain important information about your vehicle, including safety information or new operating instructions. Release notes can be viewed after

downloading and before installing the software update.

### 6.9.5 Performing Software Reset

A software reset function can be used to reset all ECUs (Electronic Control Units) in the vehicle. The software reset can only be performed when the vehicle is in standby or accessory mode.

To perform a software reset:

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Page 2 → System Information → More**

2. Tap on the software reset button. The vehicle will shut down.
3. Press the Start/Stop button or the unlock button on the remote key to wake up the vehicle.

A software reset function can be used to reset all ECUs (Electronic Control Units) in the vehicle. The software reset can only be performed when the vehicle is in standby or accessory mode.

## 6.10 Cameras

### 6.10.1 External Cameras

#### 6.10.1.1 Overview

Depending upon the vehicle equipment and the vehicle configuration several external cameras are available in the vehicle. This supports various assistance features while driving the vehicle.

#### 6.10.1.2 Front surround view camera (if equipped)



The front surround view camera is located at the shown location.

It is used to provide information when parking and maneuvering the vehicle.

### 6.10.1.3 Surround view camera on the mirror (if equipped)



A camera is located on each outside mirror.

### 6.10.1.4 Rearview camera (if equipped)



The rearview camera is located at the shown location near the tailgate handle.

It is used to provide information when parking and maneuvering the vehicle in reverse.

### 6.10.1.5 Front smart camera



The front smart camera is located behind the windshield.

The front smart camera helps in providing information to various driver assistance features.

## 6.10.2 Internal Cameras

### 6.10.2.1 Interior camera (if equipped)



An interior camera can be used to take pictures and record videos using the Togg mobile app.

The interior camera also allows entertainment functions such as taking selfies and creating visual teleconference calls to share experiences while travelling.

### 6.10.2.2 Driver infrared camera



The driver's infrared camera monitors the alertness and condition of the driver. It can detect distraction, drowsiness, and microsleeps and can alert the driver in time. For more information on driver monitoring system, Refer to [4.8.1.3 Driver Monitoring System](#).

## 6.10.3 Limitations of the Cameras

In the following situations, the camera may work as intended:

- When the camera view is obstructed by other objects.
- In extreme weather conditions such as heavy snow, rain or strong winds.

- In the dark surroundings.
- If the camera lens is damaged.

## 6.11 Trumore App

### 6.11.1 Overview

Trumore app allows to use some of the smart device settings and features by using smartphone.

### 6.11.2 Checking Device Information

To check the device information:

Go to:

**Trumore App → My Smart Device**



TG07178

1. Device Name
2. VIN Number
3. High-voltage battery State of Charge
4. Range
5. Refresh Information Page
6. Outside Air Temperature
7. Last Park Location
8. Tire Pressure
9. Low Voltage Battery Level
10. Total Mileage
11. Journey Data

12. Software Version Information

13. Owner's Manual

### Assigning new name:

You can assign personalized name to your smart device.

1. Go to:

**Trumore App → My Smart Device → Device Information → Settings**

2. Tap on the edit button and update the name.

### Changing measurement units:

1. Go to:

**Trumore App → My Smart Device → Device Information → Settings**

2. Set the desired measurement units.

### Notifications settings:

You can customize the Trumore app notifications for high-voltage battery level, tire pressure, and drivable range.

1. Go to:

**Trumore App → My Smart Device → Device Information → Settings**

2. Set the desired notification setting.

## 7 Operations & Controls

### 7.1 Exterior Lighting

#### 7.1.1 Safety Instructions

##### **WARNING**

- *The risk of accident increases if high beam is used on the approaching vehicle as it can cause glare for other drivers. Only use high beam or high beam flash when it is safe to use or traffic condition allows.*
- *There is a risk of an accident if the low beam lights are switched Off automatically in poor visibility. The system may not detect the fog. Always ensure that the automatic light function is deactivated when driving in poor visibility situations, such as fog, snow or spray.*
- *Never look too closely at the light beam of headlamp, there is a risk of serious eye injury.*

##### **INFORMATION**

Condensation may form temporarily on the inside of the lenses of exterior lights, such as headlights or taillights. This is normal and the lights are designed to withstand moisture. Normally, condensation will dissipate after the lights have been used for a short time.

#### 7.1.2 Automatic Light

When the automatic light function is activated, the low beam headlight will be automatically turned On or Off depending on ambient brightness.

The automatic light function helps when driving in a tunnel, snow or rain.

##### **Activating/Deactivating automatic light**

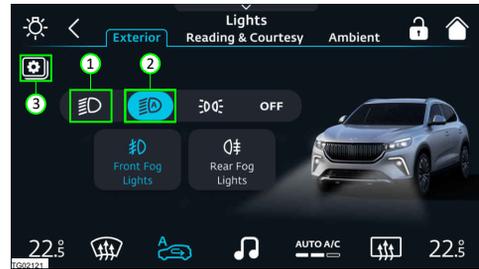
The automatic lights can be activated or deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Lights Settings → Exterior**

or

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Lights → Exterior**



1. Manual low beam mode
2. Automatic light mode
3. Exterior light settings

- Tap on the automatic light mode button (2) to activate or deactivate the function.

If the low beam is turned On manually using the manual low beam mode button (1), the automatic light function will be deactivated.

##### **INFORMATION**

*If activated, the automatic light function can only be used when the vehicle is turned On (High-voltage activated).*

##### **Automatic light limitations**

The system may not be able to detect fog or hazy weather. It is the driver's responsibility to turn On the low beam manually.

#### 7.1.3 Position Light

Position lights help other road users to see if your vehicle is stopped or parked. When the position lights are On, the license plate light will be activated.

Position lights are activated automatically when the vehicle is turned Off (High-voltage is deactivated).

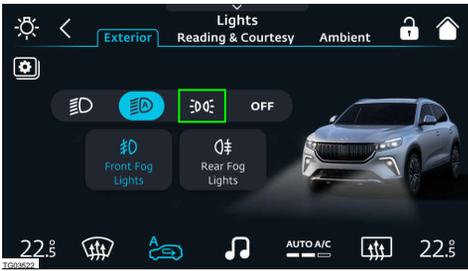
It can be activated/deactivated manually using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Lights Settings → Exterior**

or

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Lights → Exterior**



- Tap on the manual position light mode button.

#### INFORMATION

**The position lights cannot be used when the vehicle is turned On (High-voltage activated).**

### 7.1.4 Switching Exterior Lights Completely Off

Exterior lights can be completely turned Off when the vehicle is in Standby or Accessory mode using the control display.

An acoustic warning will alert the driver in the following conditions:

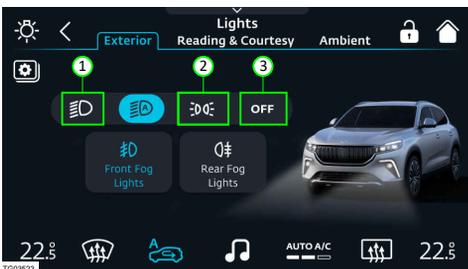
- If the vehicle is turned Off and exterior lights are still On.
- If the driver door is opened and position lights are active.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Lights Settings → Exterior**

or

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Lights → Exterior**



- Tap on the manual low beam button (1) to turn Off the low beam light.

- Tap on the position light button (2) to turn Off the position light manually.
- Tap on the button (3) to turn Off all exterior lights.

#### INFORMATION

**The "Off" button will be disabled when the vehicle is in "Ready" mode.**

### 7.1.5 All Lights Off After Locking in Accessory

All exterior lights can be turned off using this feature, e.g., when the vehicle is being charged.

#### Operating requirements:

- The vehicle is in accessory mode.
- All doors are locked.

#### INFORMATION

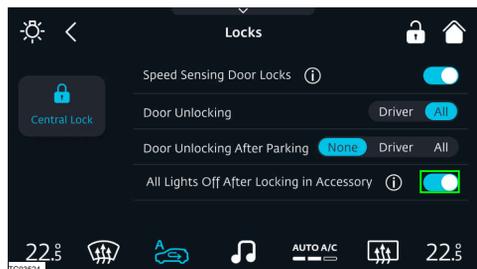
**The exterior lights will be turned On if any of the doors are unlocked or opened.**

#### Activating/deactivating the all lights off after locking in accessory

The feature can be activated/deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Locks**



- Tap on the button to activate/deactivate the all lights off after locking in accessory feature.

### 7.1.6 Light Scenario

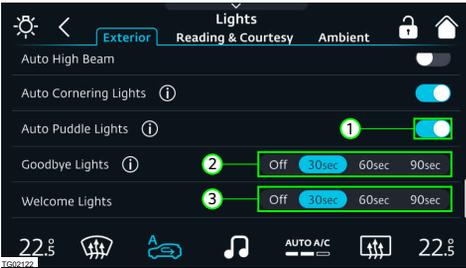
The light scenario settings can be adjusted using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Lights Settings → Exterior → Settings**

or

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Lights → Exterior → Settings**



### Welcome Light

When unlocking the vehicle, the exterior lights will turn On for a limited period of time to allow you to get in the vehicle.

#### Activating/Deactivating the welcome light

- To deactivate, select the Off button (3).
- The activation time can be adjusted by selecting the desired time span 30, 60 or 90 seconds (3).

#### Coming Home

After exiting and locking the vehicle, the exterior lights will remain turned On for a limited period of time to allow you to get out of the vehicle.

- To deactivate, select the Off button (2).
- The activation time can be adjusted by selecting the desired time span 30, 60 or 90 seconds (2).

#### Auto puddle lights

When any of the front door is opened, the puddle lights will automatically turn On.

- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the auto puddle light.

### 7.1.7 Daytime Running Light

Daytime running light will automatically turn On as the vehicle is turned On and is in a ready to drive condition.

It increases the visibility of your vehicle to other road users.

### 7.1.8 Direction Indicator



The direction indicators can be activated using the left lever on the steering wheel.

1. Push the lever down to activate the left side direction indicator.
2. Push the lever up to activate the right side direction indicator.

#### Comfort direction indication

With the comfort direction indication function, the lever needs to be touched only once for the direction indicator to flash three times. It increases safety and convenience while changing lanes or driving on motorways.

### 7.1.9 Using High Beam and Flash High Beam



When the headlamps are turned On:

1. Push the left lever forward to switch On the high beam.
2. Pull the left lever backward (towards you) to switch Off the high beam.
3. Slightly pull the left lever towards you and release it to flash the headlamps.

### 7.1.10 High Beam Light Assist (HLA) (if equipped)

When the automatic light function is active, the system automatically switches the headlamp setting to a low beam when it detects the vehicle ahead. The system will turn On the high beam as the traffic condition allows it to do. This feature helps to increase safer driving during nighttime.

This function works with the help of a front smart camera mounted on the windshield by detecting the light from the oncoming and leading vehicles.

The high beam assist function is available at a vehicle speed above 40 km/h.

The following icons are turned On to show the current state of headlights on the driver's display.

#### Display Icon

Icon	Description
	High beam light assist activated but recommended "Off" or High beam light assist is not activated
	High beam assist active and Off
	High beam light assist error
	High beam light assist is activated and recommended On
	Manual high beam activated

#### **WARNING**

**High beam assist is an assistance function. It does not relieve the driver from the responsibility to use the high or low beam. Always switch between high or low beam when traffic situations or weather conditions require it.**

#### Using the high beam light assist

The function can be used:

##### With the left lever

###### Requirement:

Automatic light mode is activated.

1. To enable, pull the left lever for 1.5 seconds.

2. To activate, push the left lever forward.

##### With the control display

###### Requirement:

Automatic light mode is activated.

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Lights Settings → Exterior → Settings**

or

**Control Display → Home Page → Manu → Controls → Lights → Exterior → Settings**



To enable the high beam light assist function, tap on the auto high beam button (2).

2. To activate, push the left lever forward.

##### Adjusting the headlight angle level

The headlight angle level can be adjusted in 4 levels as per the driver's seating position to allow better visibility.

- Adjust the level using the headlamp leveling "+" or "-" button (1).

### 7.1.11 Fog Light

#### 7.1.11.1 Overview

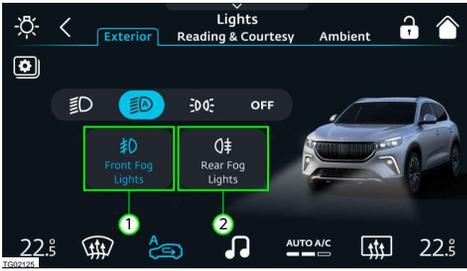
The fog lights can be activated or deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Lights Settings → Exterior**

or

**Control Display → Home Page → Manu → Controls → Lights → Exterior**



1. Front Fog Lights
2. Rear Fog Lights

### 7.1.11.2 Front fog light (if equipped)

The vehicle is equipped with LED fog lights at the front to provide maximum illumination when visibility conditions are poor, such as in rain or fog.

To use the fog light, the vehicle must be turned On (High-voltage activated).

#### Activating/Deactivating the front fog light

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Lights Settings → Exterior**

or

**Control Display → Home Page → Manu → Controls → Lights → Exterior**



- Tap on the button to activate/deactivate the front fog lights.

### 7.1.11.3 Cornering lights (if equipped)

The cornering light function activates the fog light of the corresponding side in which the steering wheel is turned or the direction indicator is activated. This function helps to illuminate the area to the side of the

vehicle to increase visibility in dark or poor light conditions.

The function is active up to the vehicle speed of 40 km/h.

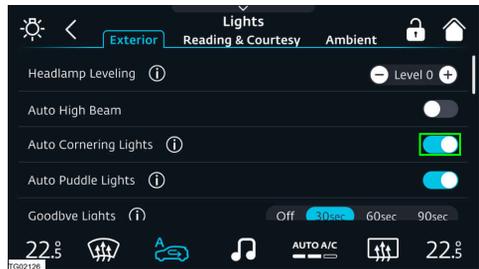
The cornering light function can be activated/deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Lights Settings → Exterior → Settings**

or

**Control Display → Home Page → Manu → Controls → Lights → Exterior → Settings**



### 7.1.11.4 Rear fog light

The vehicle is equipped with LED fog light at the rear on the left side, which increases the visibility of your vehicle to other road users in poor visibility conditions, such as in rain or fog.

#### Activating/Deactivating the rear fog light



- Tap on the button to activate/deactivate the rear fog lights.

### 7.1.11.5 Reverse light

When the gear selector is in the "R" position, the reverse lights will be turned On to alert other road users. As the vehicle starts to move forward or the gear selector is shifted to a position other than "R", the lights will turn Off.

### 7.1.12 Parking Light

It is possible to activate the one side lights when the vehicle is parked. Parking light helps other road users to see if your vehicle is stopped.

#### Activating the parking light

1. Turn Off the vehicle.
2. Push the left lever up or down to activate the parking light on right or left side.

#### Deactivating the parking light

- Push the left lever to its normal position.

#### INFORMATION

***Do not keep the parking lights On for a long period of time as it may drain the vehicle low-voltage battery.***

### 7.1.13 Brake Light

The brake lights will be activated when the driver applies the brake, which helps to warn the following vehicle.

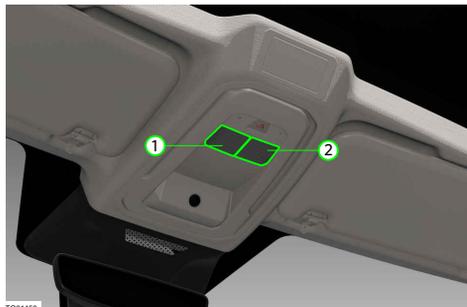
#### Adaptive brake light

The adaptive brake light is activated in the event of hard braking at high speeds to alert the vehicle behind. The function flashes the brake lights. Depending on the braking severity, hazard warning lights are also activated. The normal brightness is resumed as the driver releases the brake pedal.

## 7.2 Interior Lighting

### 7.2.1 Reading Light

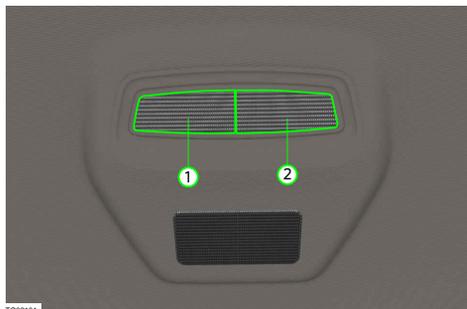
#### 7.2.1.1 Reading light front



Switching front reading light On/Off

- Press the lens button (1) for the left reading.
- Press the lens button (2) for the right reading.

#### 7.2.1.2 Reading light rear (if equipped)



Switching rear reading light On/Off

- Press the lens button (1) for the left reading.
- Press the lens button (2) for the right reading.

#### 7.2.1.3 Reading light rear for panorooft (if equipped)



Switching the rear reading light On/Off

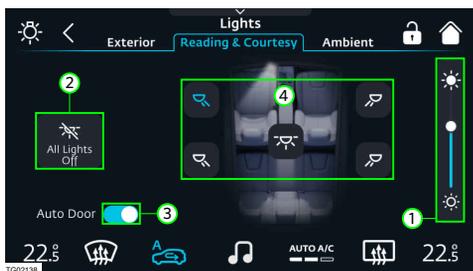
- Press the lens button above the relevant door.

## 7.2.2 Adjusting the Reading Light Settings

The reading light settings can be adjusted using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Lights Settings  
→ Reading & Courtesy**



- Tap on the desired individual button (4) to switch On/Off the desired reading light.
- Tap on the button (2) to turn Off all the reading/courtesy and footwell lights (if equipped).
- Tap on the button (3) to activate/deactivate the auto door function.

It activates courtesy lights and footwell lights (if equipped) when the vehicle door is opened.

### Adjusting the brightness:

The brightness of the reading lights can be adjusted with the following ways.

Using the on the control display:

- Tap on the desired individual button (4) to select the light and adjust the brightness using the slider (1).

Or

Using the lens button on individual lights (Refer to [7.2.1 Reading Light](#)):

- Long press the lens button on light to adjust the brightness.

### INFORMATION

**Reading light brightness can only be adjusted when the reading light is turned On.**

## 7.2.3 Courtesy Light

The courtesy lights are provided for the passenger's convenience. The interior light at the front and rear and footwell lights (if equipped) at the front will switch On automatically.

It will switch On under the following conditions:

- When the vehicle is unlocked or a door is opened.
- When the vehicle is turned Off.

It will switch Off under the following conditions:

- When the vehicle is turned On.
- After 25 seconds, when all the doors are closed and the vehicle is locked.

## 7.2.4 Trunk Light

Trunk lights are provided to illuminate the trunk storage area. The trunk light will switch On when the tailgate is opened.

## 7.2.5 Glove Box Light

Glove box lights are provided to illuminate the glove box storage area. The light will switch On when the glove box is opened.

## 7.2.6 Ambient Lighting (if equipped)

### 7.2.6.1 Overview

Ambient lights are provided on the door trims and overhead console and illuminate with your choice of color.

The ambient lights will switch On when the vehicle is unlocked or the vehicle is in "Accessory" mode and will switch Off when the vehicle is locked or the vehicle is in "Standby" mode.

If the ambient light is turned Off using the control display, it will not switch On when the vehicle is unlocked.

### 7.2.6.2 Adjusting the ambient light settings

The color and brightness of the ambient can be adjusted using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Lights Settings  
→ Ambient**



- Tap on the button (1) to turn On/Off the ambient light.
- Adjusting the color and brightness:
  1. Tap on the button (2) to enable the color palette and brightness adjuster.
  2. Set the desired color of ambient light using the color palette (3).
  3. Adjust the ambient light brightness using the slider (4).

### INFORMATION

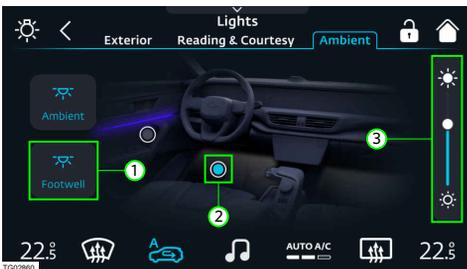
**Ambient lighting brightness and color can only be adjusted when the ambient lighting is turned On.**

#### 7.2.6.3 Adjusting the footwell light settings (if equipped)

The footwell lights settings can be adjusted using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Lights Settings → Ambient**



- Tap on the button (1) to turn On/Off the footwell lights.
- Tap on the button (2) to enable the brightness adjuster and adjust the footwell light brightness using the slider (3).

### INFORMATION

**The brightness of the footwell lights can only be adjusted when the footwell lights are turned On.**

## 7.3 Seats

### 7.3.1 Safety Instructions

#### ⚠ WARNING

- **There is a risk of serious injury or accident while adjusting the driver's seat when a vehicle is in motion. The seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose vehicle control. Always adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary.**
- **There is a risk of becoming trapped when adjusting the seats. Always keep the seat movement area free while adjusting the seats.**
- **Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. There is a risk of children becoming trapped if they adjust the seats.**
- **After adjusting a manual seat, always check that it is locked by shifting your weight to the front and back. Sudden or unexpected movement of the driver's seat could cause you to lose control of the vehicle.**
- **Do not install seat protective covers unless they are specifically approved for use in your vehicle. Unapproved seat protective covers may block airbag deployment.**
- **There is a risk of serious injury by sliding under the lap portion of the seat belt in the event of an accident if aftermarket seat pads and/or seat covers are used. Aftermarket seat pads or seat covers reduce friction between the seat and the passenger. Never use aftermarket seat pads and/ seat covers.**
- **Never store any objects under the front seats. Loose objects may slide and can become trapped in the brake pedal or accelerator pedal limiting their functions. There is a risk of accident or losing vehicle control.**
- **There is a risk of serious injury. Do not adjust the backrest angle too far back. Risk of sliding under the seat belt in the event of an accident or braking maneuvers increases. Adjust the backrest as upright as possible.**
- **There is a risk of injury to the hands by the sharp edges of the seat mechanism when picking the small objects trapped under the seats or between**

**the seat and center console. Carefully pick the small objects.**

- **There is a risk of becoming trapped when adjusting or removing the headrest. Always keep the headrest movement area free while adjusting the headrest.**
- **There is a risk of serious injury in the event of an accident if the headrest is fitted or adjusted incorrectly. Always make sure that the headrests are fitted correctly.**
- **Always adjust the seat when you are not wearing the seat belt. There is a risk of exerting pressure on your abdomen by the seat belt if the seat cushion is moved forward.**
- **Never transport passengers in the trunk storage. Every passenger must be secured with the safety belts in the vehicle.**
- **Never install or cover the electrical controls with seat protective covers.**
- **There is a risk of injury to the passenger in the event of an accident or maneuvers if the luggage is stored higher than the rear seat backrest height. Always stow and secure large and heavy objects with suitable straps at the tie bracket hook.**
- **To have a maximum protective effect from the airbags, always use and position the seat belt correctly.**

### 7.3.2 Correct Seating Position

Correct seating position ensures safe and fatigue-free driving.

Make sure to adjust the driver's seat to meet individual requirements.

Ensure following points:

1. Your legs are not fully extended and pedals are easily accessible and can be completely pressed.
2. There is at least a 25 cm distance between your upper body and the steering wheel.
3. Your thighs are supported by the seat surface.
4. Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
5. The backrest is in an upright position and your back is resting against it.
6. Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly.
7. Adjust the headrest such that the back of your head is supported at eye level by the center of the headrest.

8. You have a clear view of the driver's display and traffic conditions.

### 7.3.3 Adjusting Seat

#### 7.3.3.1 Overview

The front seats can be adjusted as per the desired seating position. Always adapt the correct seating position by adjusting the seat for a fatigue-free and comfortable drive.

#### 7.3.3.2 Manual seats with lumbar support (if equipped)

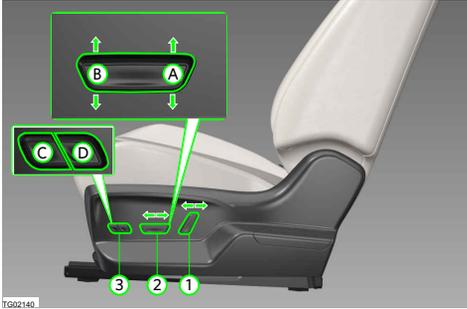


- To adjust the backrest angle, lean slightly forward and operate the recliner knob (1). Adjust the backrest angle to the desired position.
- To adjust the longitudinal seat position, lift the lever (4) and slide the front seat to the desired position. Make sure the seat is engaged.
- To adjust the seat height, move the lever (2) up or down until the seat is at the desired seat height.
- To adjust the lumbar support, operate the wheel (3).

#### INFORMATION

**If the vehicle is equipped with manually adjusted seats, the lumbar support adjustment is only possible for the driver's seat.**

### 7.3.3.4 Electric seats (if equipped)



- To adjust the seat backrest angle, press the switch (1) forward or backward.
- To adjust the seat height, press the switch (2) up or down at location (A).
- To adjust the seat cushion inclination, press the switch (2) up or down at location (B).
- To adjust the back and forth seat position, press the switch (2) forward or backward.
- To adjust the lumbar support as per the desired position, push the switch (3) at (C) and (D) location.

#### INFORMATION

**Electrical adjustment of the seat backrest angle and lumbar support is not available for the passenger seat.**

## 7.3.4 Headrest Adjustment

### 7.3.4.1 Overview

The vehicle is equipped with a headrest for each seat. The headrest can be adjusted to the desired position as per the driver's seating position. Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same height as the top of the head but not lower than eye level. Position the back of your head as close to the head restraint as possible. Always make sure to adapt the correct seating position.

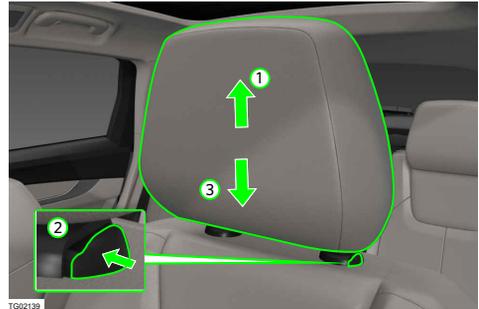
#### ⚠ ATTENTION

**There is a risk of component damage if the front seat with the headrest raised is reclined towards the front. It may come in contact with the headliner or sun visor.**

#### INFORMATION

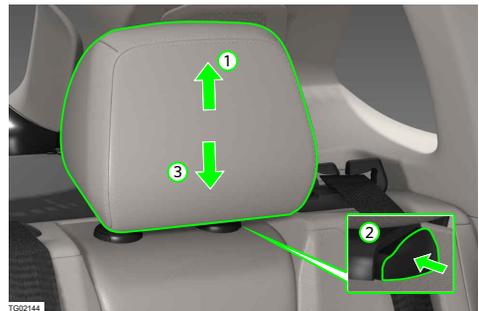
**When using a forward-facing child restraint on a rear seat, always remove the headrest from that seat.**

### 7.3.4.2 Front headrest



1. To raise the height of the headrest:  
Pull the headrest up (1) to the desired position. The headrest can be felt to click into position.
2. To lower the height:  
Press the left button (2) and push the headrest down (3).

### 7.3.4.3 Rear headrest



1. To raise the height of the headrest:  
Pull the headrest up (1) to the desired position. The headrest can be felt to click into position.
2. To lower the height:  
Press the button (2) and push the headrest down (3).

#### ⚠ ATTENTION

**Make sure to raise the rear headrest when the rear seat is occupied by a passenger. The rear seat headrest must not be used in the lowest position.**

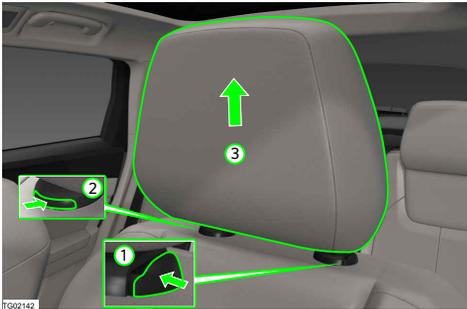
### 7.3.4.4 Removing the headrest

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Do not swap the headrests while reinstalling. Headrests are specifically designed to fit in their respective backrest. Correct fitting is not guaranteed if installed at other locations. There is a risk of serious injury if the headrests are not fitted correctly.**

#### **⚠ ATTENTION**

**There is a risk of material damage while removing the headrest. Be careful not to damage the sunshade or other vehicle interior components.**



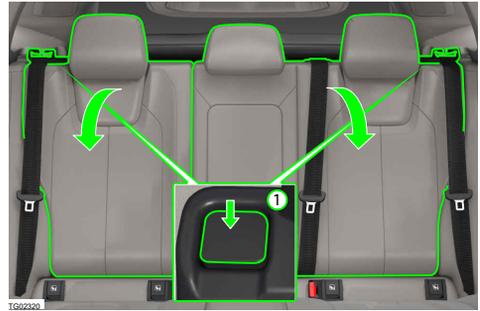
1. Adjust the seat backrest if necessary to remove the headrest.
2. Raise the headrest all the way up.
3. Press and hold both the buttons (1) and (2) and pull out (3) the headrest.

### 7.3.4.5 Installing the headrest

Align the headrest stem correctly against the backrest hole and insert the headrest into the corresponding seat backrest and press it down to fit in the proper position.

### 7.3.5 Rear Seats

#### 7.3.5.1 Folding rear seat backrest



The rear seat backrest is split into two sections. The two sections can be folded down individually to increase trunk capacity.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- **There is a risk of entrapment when folding down the rear seat backrest. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Before folding down, make sure that the area of movement of the rear seat backrest and the headrest is kept clear.**
- **There is a risk of injury or entrapment. Do not fold the seat backrest if the seat belt is fastened.**
- **Always ensure backrest is correctly locked to prevent objects from sliding forward during sudden braking or in the event of an accident.**

#### **⚠ ATTENTION**

- **Once the rear seat backrest has been folded down, the striker protrudes into the interior. There is a risk of material damage. When the rear seat backrest is folded down, watch out for the protruding striker and keep this area clear.**
- **The armrest in the center seat must be raised before the rear seat backrest is folded down.**
- **Always make sure that the seat belt is positioned correctly after folding up the seat backrest.**

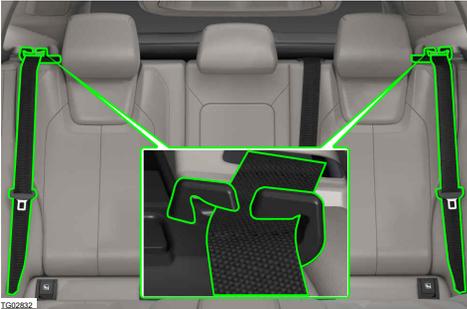
#### 7.3.5.2 Folding down the backrest

1. Push the headrest down.
2. Push the button (1) on left or right backrest and pull forward the required backrest to fold down.

#### 7.3.5.3 Folding up the backrest

1. Move the backrest upward/rearward.

2. Press the backrest until it locks into position. Make sure that the red label on the button (1) is not visible.
3. Position the lateral seat belts through the belt guide.



4. Adjust the headrest as required.

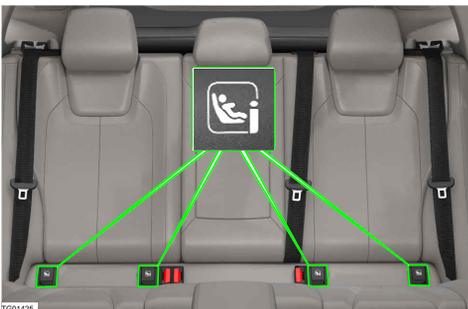
#### 7.3.5.4 Rear armrest with cupholder (if equipped)

To use the cupholder, fold down rear armrest.



#### 7.3.5.5 Attachment points for child restraint system on rear seats

##### i-Size mounts



#### Top-tether anchorage



For more information related to attachment points for child restraint system on rear seats, Refer to [2.3.2.2 Attachment points for Child Restraint System](#) .

#### 7.3.6 Seat Heating (if equipped)

##### 7.3.6.1 Overview

##### **WARNING**

- **Do not place heavy objects on the seats if the seat heating function is turned On.**
- **Do not use the seat heating function if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly before activating the function.**
- **If the seat cover is soaked through, this can cause the seat heating to malfunction and increase the risk of burns. Never sit on the seat while wearing damp or wet clothing. Make sure the seat surface is dry before using the seat heating function.**
- **Do not place any damp or wet objects and clothing on the seat. There is a risk of short circuit.**
- **For persons with sensitive skin prolong use of seat heating function is not recommended.**
- **There is a risk of skin burn for persons with disability to sense heat or taking medical treatments.**
- **Do not use the insulating material to cover the seats, there is a risk of system overheating.**
- **Do not use seat heating function,**
  - **If the seat backrest is folded.**
  - **If child seats are installed.**
- **To avoid burns resulting from prolonged use, individuals who have peripheral neuropathy, or whose capacity to feel pain is limited because of diabetes, age, neurological injury, or some other condition, should exercise caution when using the climate control system and seat heaters.**

## ⚠ ATTENTION

**There is a risk of damage to the seat heating element, do not kneel on the seat or place sharp objects on the seat or spill liquid on the seat.**

The seat heating feature is only available when the vehicle is turned On. Seat heating will be turned Off automatically if the interior temperature is high.

The seat heating level for front and rear row seats can be adjusted using the control display. It is also possible to adjust the rear seat heating level using the buttons below the rear air vent.

### 7.3.6.2 Front row seat

The heating level for the front row can be adjusted in 3 levels using the seat heating button. The indicator light on the seat heating button indicates the current level.

No indicator light on the seat heating button indicates seat heating is Off for the corresponding seat.

To adjust heating level for front seat:

Go to:

**Control Display → Climate Control → Front**



- Tap on the (1) or (2) seat heating button to adjust the heating level of the driver or front passenger seat.

### 7.3.6.3 Rear row seat (if equipped)

The heating level for the rear row can be adjusted in 2 levels using the seat heating button. The indicator light on the seat heating button indicates the current level.

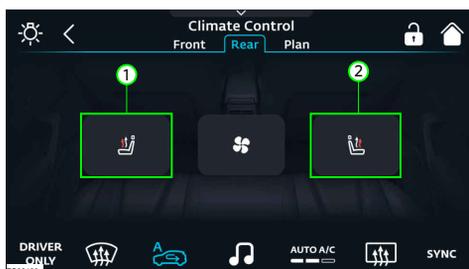
No indicator light on the seat heating button indicates seat heating is Off for the corresponding seat.

The rear row seat heating can be adjusted using the control display or the buttons on the rear AC vent.

To adjust heating level for rear seat using the control display,

Go to:

**Control Display → Climate Control → Rear**



- Tap on the (1) or (2) seat heating button to adjust the heating level of the left or right seat.

To adjust heating level for rear seat using the buttons below the rear air vent,



- Press the (1) or (2) seat heating button to adjust the heating level of the left or right seat.

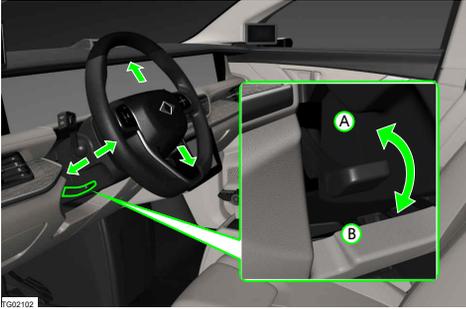
## 7.4 Steering Wheel Controls

### 7.4.1 Safety Instructions

#### ⚠ WARNING

- **There is a risk of losing vehicle control if the steering wheel is adjusted when the vehicle is in motion. Always adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is stationary.**
- **Always make sure the steering wheel locks into position after adjusting.**
- **There is a risk of injury to children by getting trapped when adjusting the steering wheel. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.**

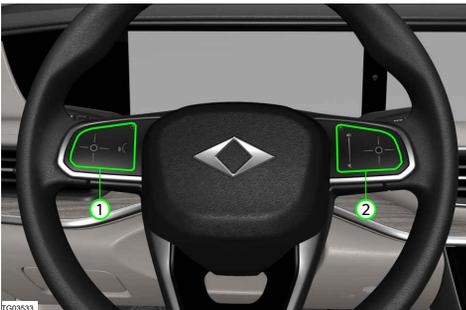
## 7.4.2 Adjusting the Steering Wheel



1. Push the lever down (B) to unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position by moving vertically and horizontally.
3. Pull the lever up (A) to lock the steering column.
4. Check and ensure that the steering wheel is locked by moving it.

## 7.4.3 Steering Wheel Switches

The steering wheel switches are touch sensitive and provides haptic feedback in the form of vibrations. Feedback is provided when you press the touch pad on the steering wheel.



1. Left steering wheel switch

The left steering wheel switch has the following functions:

- Operate the driver's screen information display (Refer to [6.2.3.2 Operating the information display \(1\)](#) )
- Digital assistant (Refer to [6.2.4 Digital Assistant \(if equipped\)](#) )

2. Right steering wheel switch

The right steering wheel switch has the following functions:

- Operate the driver's screen function menu (Refer to [6.2.3.3 Operating the function menu \(2\)](#) )
- Adjust/mute the media or phone volume (Refer to [6.2.3.3 Operating the function menu \(2\)](#) )

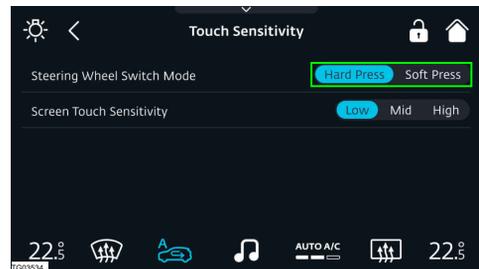
You can choose the press sensitivity in two modes:

- Hard Press
- Soft Press

Using the control display settings can be changed.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Settings → Touch Sensitivity**



- Tap on the button to set the desired steering wheel switch mode.

## 7.5 Mirrors

### 7.5.1 Classical Mirror

#### 7.5.1.1 Safety instructions

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not adjust the mirrors while driving as there is a risk of losing vehicle control. Always adjust the mirrors when the vehicle is stationary.**
- **Always make sure mirrors are positioned correctly and ice, snow, condensation, or other objects are not blocking outside mirrors.**
- **Objects in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to road users behind the vehicle can be misjudged, such as when changing lanes. Use the rear view mirror for judging distance as well.**

#### 7.5.1.2 Adjusting outside mirror

The outside mirrors can be adjusted as per the driver's height and seating position to improve visibility to the rear.

The adjustment can be done using the "control display" and "rotary knob".

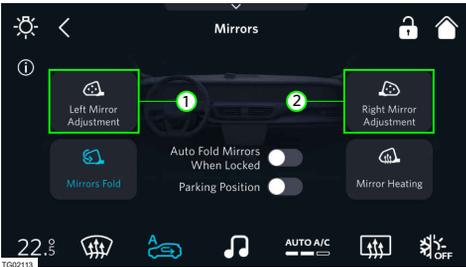
Follow the below procedure:

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Mirrors Settings**

Or

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Mirrors**



Select the desired mirror to adjust "Left" (1) or "Right" (2).

2. Adjust the mirror position using the rotary knob.



### 7.5.1.3 Power folding outside mirror (if equipped)

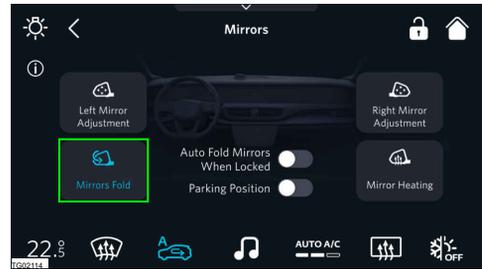
Outside mirrors can be folded In or Out using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Mirrors Settings**

Or

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Mirrors**



- Tap on the mirrors fold button to fold the outside mirrors.

Folding the outside mirror is helpful in the following situations:

- When driving through narrow streets
- In car wash

Outside mirrors can be folded in up to the vehicle speed of approximately 20 km/h.

When the vehicle speed exceeds 40 km/h, the outside mirrors will fold out automatically.

### Folding outside mirrors with remote key

For the vehicles equipped with a keyless entry feature, outside mirrors can be folded in/out when the vehicle is locked/unlocked.

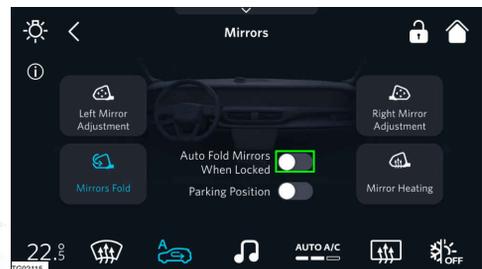
The function can be activated/deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Mirrors Settings**

Or

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Mirrors**



- Tap on the auto fold button to activate/deactivate the auto fold function.

### 7.5.1.5 Parking position

To provide a better view of the kerb or other objects near the ground, the outside mirror glass on the right side is tilted downwards when the gear selector is in the "R" position. The mirror glass will come to its normal position if the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h in "R" mode.

The outside mirror glass will come to its normal position when the gear selector is in the position other than the "R".

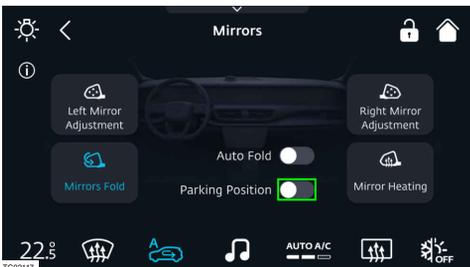
The function can be activated/deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Mirrors Settings**

Or

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Mirrors**



- Tap on the parking position button to activate/deactivate the function.

#### INFORMATION

**The right outside mirror is not adjustable if the parking position function is active. If it is manually adjusted, then it will come to its normal position.**

### 7.5.1.6 Outside mirror heating

The mirror heating function quickly removes misting and ice from the outside mirrors. It also helps to eliminate condensation on the outside mirror glass and improve visibility.

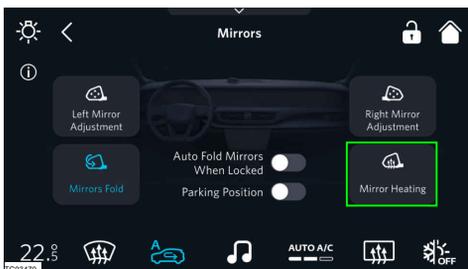
The function can be activated/deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Mirrors Settings**

Or

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Mirrors**



- Tap on the mirror heating button to activate/deactivate the outside mirror heating.

After 15 minutes, the outside mirror heating will automatically deactivate.

#### INFORMATION

**When max defrost is activated and the outside temperature is below or equal to 15°C, then outside mirror heating and rear window heating are activated automatically. (Refer to [8.3.2 Max Defrost](#))**

#### INFORMATION

- The outside mirror heating is activated or deactivated when the outside temperature is below 30°C and either the windshield heater or rear window heating is activated or deactivated.
- If the outside mirror heating function is active and the outside temperature is equal to or above 31 °C, it will automatically deactivate and activate again once the outside temperature is equal to or below 30°C.

## 7.5.2 Camera Mirror System (if equipped)

### 7.5.2.1 Safety instruction

#### WARNING

**There is a risk of accident due to malfunction or system failure of the camera mirror system. Do not continue driving when display backlight is gone intentionally due to system failure. It is recommended to contact a Togg authorized service. The system must be repaired before continuing the journey in the following situations:**

- Complete failure of the display

- **Frozen image - despite changes in the camera's view**
- **Delayed image stream**
- **Reversed image**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the display shows an unusual or faulty image, it is recommended that the system must be checked as soon as possible at a Togg authorized service and, if necessary, be repaired.**

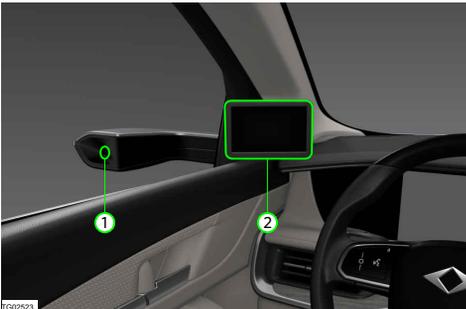
**This includes the following display situations:**

- **Distorted images**
- **Clearly noticeable pixel errors, column or row failures**
- **Contrast or color changes**
- **No information between the mode changes**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the camera mirror system display shows blurred, unclear, or fuzzy images, check if the camera lens is dirty and clean it if necessary. If the displayed image doesn't improve as a result, it is recommended that the system be checked as soon as possible at a Togg authorized service.**

**7.5.2.2 Overview**



The camera mirror system replaces the conventional outside rearview mirrors with compact, external high-resolution camera (1) linked to a display (2) on each side. This helps to provide an enhanced view of the area behind and alongside the vehicle, reducing the driver's blind spots.

The system automatically reduces the brightness of the display, depending on the brightness of the ambient light.

The system is equipped with a temperature sensor, which controls the temperatures for camera and display operating. The operating temperature interval

is -40°C to 85°C for the camera, and -30°C to 85°C for the display.

**7.5.2.3 Camera mirror system operational modes**

The system has three operational modes:

- Freeway
- Lane Change
- Parking

**Freeway**

The default mode of the system is freeway, which is available to the driver after the system is activated.

**Lane Change**

Lane change mode is triggered when the right or left direction indicator is activated. This mode provides a wider field of view on the side indicated by switching the direction indicators, hence reducing the likelihood of blind spots when changing lanes.

**Parking**

Parking mode is available when the gear is put into reverse. This mode assists the driver with a better field of view for parking purposes.

**7.5.2.4 Using the camera mirror system**

The camera mirror system is automatically activated when the vehicle is turned On.

**INFORMATION**

**The default field of view is available to view on the camera mirror system display within 7 seconds of automatically activating the system.**

**Standby Mode**

The camera mirror system switches to standby mode 2 minutes after stopping the vehicle. In standby mode, the camera mirror system is reactivated within 1 second on demand.

**7.5.2.5 Camera mirror system settings**

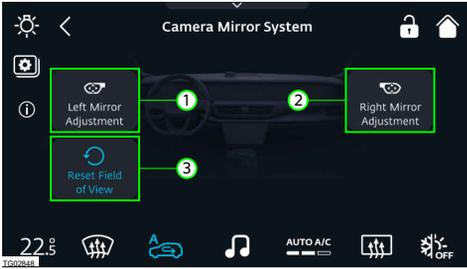
The camera mirror system settings can be adjusted using the control display as per the driver's height and seating position to improve visibility to the rear.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Mirrors Settings**

Or

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Mirrors**



### Manually adjusting the field of view

The driver can adjust the field of view manually. The latest settings are remembered by the system.

The field of view adjustment can be done using the "control display" and "rotary knob."

- To change field of view:
  1. Select the desired mirror left (1) or right (2).
  2. Adjust the field of view using the rotary knob.



- Tap on the button (3) to reset field of view.

### Temporarily modified field of view

When field of view is modified temporarily by choosing "Auto Lane Change Field of View" and/or "Auto Parking Field of View", the system pushes a notification on the display that the system is not displaying the default settings for the field of view.

### Adjusting display settings

The display and camera mirror system function settings can be adjusted using the control display.

The brightness of the left and right camera mirror system display can be adjusted separately.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Mirrors Settings → Settings**

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Mirrors → Settings**



- Tap on the slider (1) to adjust the display brightness.
- Tap on the button (2) to activate/deactivate the auto lane change field of view.
- Tap on the button (3) to activate/deactivate the parking field of view.
- Tap on the button (4) to activate/deactivate the auto dimming.

### 7.5.2.6 Display Icons and Overlays

The display has temporary transparent overlays within the field of vision.

Icon	Description
	Lane change field of view right
	Lane change field of view left
	Park field of view left
	Park field of view right
	Rear cross traffic collision avoidance left
	Rear cross traffic collision avoidance right

Or

	Front cross traffic collision avoidance left
	Front cross traffic collision avoidance right
	Blind spot collision avoidance left side
	Blind spot collision avoidance right side
	Safe exit warning left side
	Safe exit warning right side
	Door open indicator right side
	Door open indicator both side
	Door open indicator left side
	Screen brightness indicator. Set brightness value is indicated at center of icon.
	Camera mirror system link lost
	Manual field of view reset indicator
	Manual field of view right movement indicator
	Manual field of view left movement indicator
	Manual field of view up movement indicator

	Manual field of view down movement indicator
	Default field of view frame indicator
	Camera blockage indicator
	Heater indicator

### 7.5.2.7 Outside camera heating

The outside camera heating function helps to remove the condensation on the outside camera and improve visibility in cold driving conditions.

Go to:

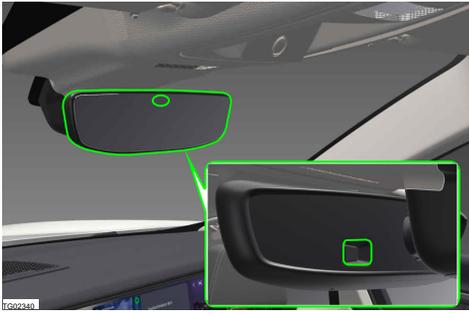
**Control Display → Home Page → Climate Control → Front**



- Tap on the camera heating button to activate/deactivate the outside camera heating.

## 7.5.3 Rear View Mirror

### 7.5.3.1 Rear view mirror auto dimming (if equipped)



The rearview mirror is dimmed automatically depending upon the brightness measured by two light sensors.

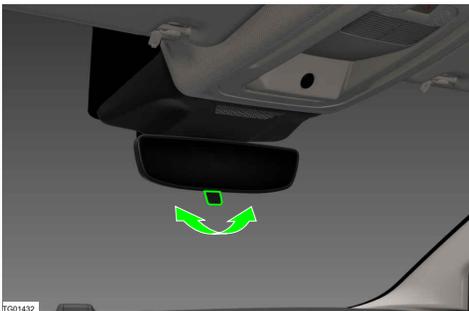
- In the rearview mirror glass
- Back of the rearview mirror

The sensor in the mirror glass monitors the light from the headlights of the vehicle behind you, while the sensor on the back monitors the ambient light.

#### **⚠ ATTENTION**

**The auto dimming function may not work if the sensors are obstructed. Do not obstruct the rearview mirror with objects, such as stickers or any accessories. Keep the sensor area clean.**

### 7.5.3.2 Rear view mirror manual dimming (if equipped)



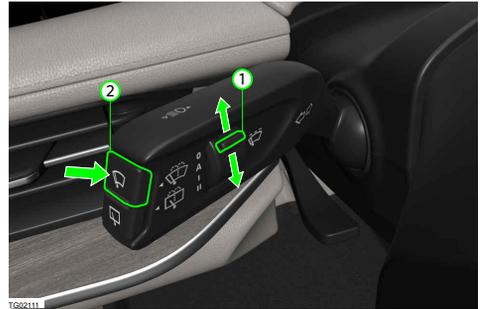
The rearview mirror can be adjusted manually using a lever.

- Pull the lever on the rearview mirror inward for a standard setting.
- Push the lever on the rearview mirror outward to use a dimming view setting.

## 7.6 Wipers and Windshield Washer

### 7.6.1 Wiper Controls

#### 7.6.1.1 Front wipers



- 0 - Front wipers Off
- A - Auto (Rain Sensing Mode)
- I - Continuous slow wiping
- II - Continuous fast wiping

#### **To turn On:**

- Move button (1) to the "A" position to activate the auto mode.
- Move button (1) to the "I" position to activate slow wiping mode.
- Move button (1) to the "II" position to activate the fast wiping mode.

#### **To turn Off:**

- Move button (1) to the "0" position.

#### **To spray and wipe:**

- Press the front washer button (2) for 3 seconds.

#### 7.6.1.2 Rear wiper



#### **To turn On/Off:**

- Short press the rear wiper button to turn On the rear wiper.

- Short press the rear wiper button to turn Off the rear wiper.

**To spray and wipe:**

- Long press the rear wiper button to spray and wipe.

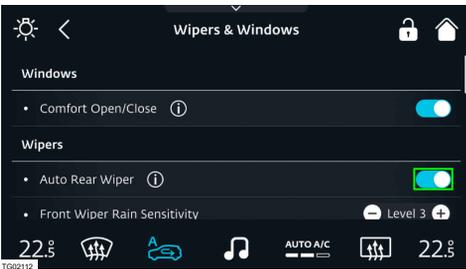
**7.6.1.3 Rear wiper in reverse gear**

If the front wiper is active and the gear selector is shifted to the "R" position, the rear wiper will wipe once.

The feature can be activated/deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Page (2) → Wipers & Windows**



- Tap on the auto rear wiper button to activate/deactivate the function.

**7.6.1.4 Rain sensing wiper**

The system controls the speed of the front wiper depending upon the intensity of the rain. The function works in coordination with the rain and light sensor mounted on the windshield in front of the rear view mirror.



**To turn On:**

Move the button to "A" position.

**To turn Off:**

Move the button to "0" position.

**⚠ ATTENTION**

*There is a risk of component damage if wipers are activated in the car wash. Always ensure that the auto mode is deactivated in the car wash.*

**Adjusting front wiper rain sensitivity**

The front wiper rain sensitivity can be adjusted using control display.

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Page (2) → Wipers & Windows**



2. Press the "+" or "-" button to increase or decrease the sensitivity.

**7.6.2 Refilling Washer Fluid**

All the spray nozzles share a common reservoir. When there is approximately 0.5 litre of washer fluid remaining in the reservoir, a warning symbol will be displayed on the driver's screen.

**Display icon**

Icon	Description
	Washer fluid level low (Icon is steady)

**Follow the below steps for refilling washer fluid:**

1. Open the hood and clean the area around the cap on the washer fluid.
2. Open the cap and fill the reservoir.



3. Wipe up the spills immediately and close the cap carefully.

### **WARNING**

- **In temperatures below 4° C, use washer fluid with antifreeze. In cold weather, using a washer fluid without antifreeze can impair visibility through the windshield.**
- **Do not mix different washer fluid concentrates or antifreeze. Mixing different washer fluid concentrates or antifreeze may damage the washer system. There is a risk of material damage. Please comply with the instructions and mixing ratios stated on the containers.**
- **The use of washer fluid with high chemical concentration at high temperatures may damage outside plastic parts of the vehicle.**

### 7.6.3 Checking and Replacing Wiper Blade

Periodically check the wiper blade rubber for cracks, splits, and roughness. If damaged, replace the wiper blades immediately to prevent damage to the windshield.

### **ATTENTION**

- **The windshield may get damaged if a wiper arm falls onto it without the wiper blade fitted. There is a risk of material damage. Hold the wiper arm firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold in or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.**
- **There is a risk of component damage. Do not lift the wiper arm by holding the wiper blade.**
- **There is a risk of component damage if the wipers start moving when they are folded out. Always make sure that the wipers are in contact with the windshield when deactivating the service mode.**

- **There is a risk of component damage if the hood is opened when the wiper blades are folded out. Make sure that the wipers are in contact with the windshield when opening the hood.**

### Service mode

#### Activating service mode:



1. Switch the vehicle from ready mode to accessory mode.
2. Press the front washer button for 3 seconds within 10 seconds from the vehicle being turned accessory mode.
3. Front wipers will come to service mode.

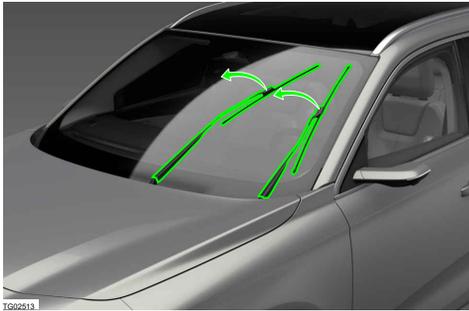


#### Deactivating service mode:

1. Press the front washer button for a short time when vehicle is in accessory mode.
2. With a single wipe, the wipers will come to the park position.

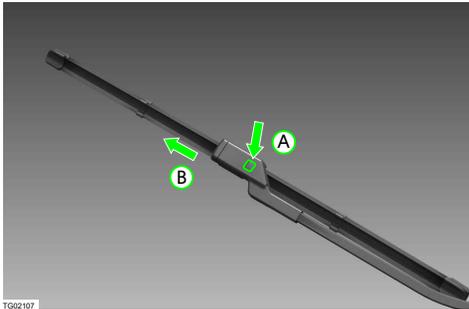
#### Replacing front wiper blades

1. Activate the service mode.
2. Lift the wiper arm and hold them securely.



TG02013

3. Press the wiper blade locking button (A) and remove the wiper blade (B).



TG02107

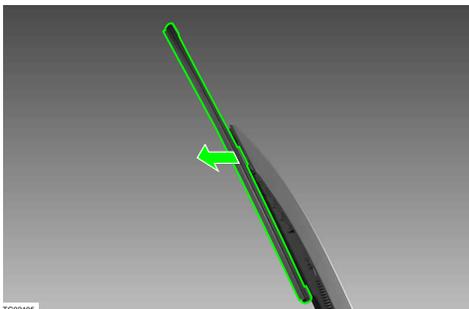
4. Reverse the removal procedure for installation.

### INFORMATION

**Ensure that the wiper blade is locked into place properly.**

#### ▪ Replacing rear wiper blades

1. Lift the wiper arm.
2. Pull out the wiper blade.



TG02105

3. To install, place the new wiper blade and press fit. The wiper blade must engage audibly.

### INFORMATION

**Ensure that the wiper blade is locked into place properly.**

## 7.7 Memory Function

### 7.7.1 Safety Instructions

#### ⚠ WARNING

- **There is a risk of entrapment if the seats are moved. Always make sure the seat movement area is free when adjusting the seats.**
- **There is a risk of an accident if the memory function is activated when the vehicle is moving by losing vehicle control. Never use the memory function when the vehicle is moving.**

### 7.7.2 Storing the Position

The memory function allows you to set up to 3 seat positions for the driver and front passenger seats. It also stores the outside mirror position for the set driver seat position.

The seat positions can be stored using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Seat Memory**



- A – Driver seat position
- B – Front passenger seat position

#### Storing the position

1. Turn On the vehicle.
2. Adjust the seat as per the desired seating position.
3. Long press the button (1, 2, or 3) to store the position.

### **Recalling the stored position**

- Short press the desired button (1, 2, or 3). The stored position will be retrieved.

# 8 Climate Control

## 8.1 Overview

### 8.1.1 Brief Overview of Climate Control

Climate control functions can be operated using the center display. Blower speed and temperature can be controlled for individual climate zones.

#### Front

Go to:

**Control Display → Climate Control → Front**

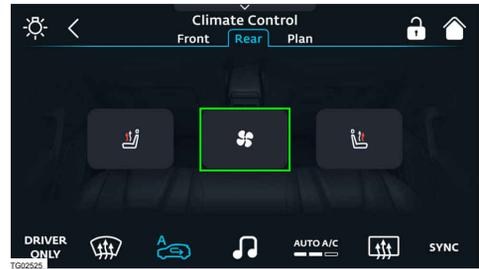


- 1. Driver side temperature control
- 2. Driver side air distribution control
- 3. A/C MAX
- 4. Climate control On/Off
- 5. Windshield heater
- 6. A/C
- 7. Passenger side air distribution control
- 8. Passenger side temperature control
- 9. DRIVER ONLY mode
- 10. Max defrost
- 11. Air recirculation
- 12. Blower speed setting
- 13. Rear window heating
- 14. AUTO mode
- 15. SYNC mode for driver and passenger

#### Rear

Go to:

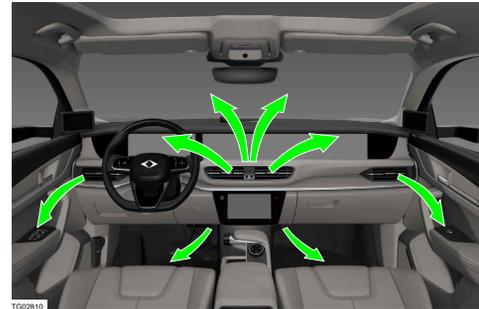
**Control Display → Climate Control → Rear**



- Rear row blower On/Off

### 8.1.2 Air Flow

#### Air flow at front



#### Air flow at rear



#### INFORMATION

*Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.*

## 8.2 Functions & Settings

### 8.2.1 Overview

The vehicle is equipped with a dual-zone climate control system. Temperature, air distribution, and direction of airflow can be adjusted separately for left and right climate zones.

Climate control functions can be operated using the control display.

#### INFORMATION

- **Close all the door windows to obtain optimal performance from the climate control system.**
- **The climate control function consumes energy from the high-voltage battery to operate. Prolonged use of climate control system decreases the driving range. Conserve the high-voltage battery charge by using the climate control function when necessary.**

### 8.2.2 Switching Climate Control On/Off

The climate control can be switched On/Off using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Climate Control**



To switch On, tap on any of the following buttons:

- AUTO mode (1)
- Temperature (2)
- A/C Max (3)
- A/C (4)
- Climate control On/Off (5)

To switch Off, tap on any of the following buttons:

- Climate control On/Off (5)
- Reduce the blower speed to "0" level (6)

### 8.2.3 Air Distribution Control

The air distribution for driver and passenger side can be adjusted individually using the control display.

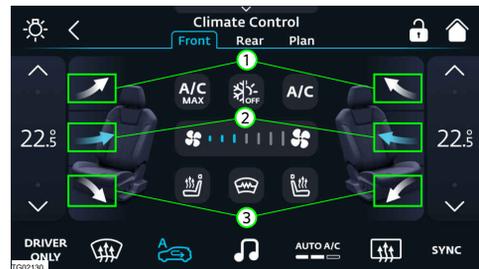
Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Climate Control → Front**



1. Driver side air distribution control
2. Passenger side air distribution control

#### Adjusting air distribution



1. Direction of windshield
2. Direction of face
3. Foot area

Tap one or more air distribution buttons to open/close the airflow for that vent.

To indicate the selected air distribution, buttons will light up.

It is not possible to deselect all air distributions at the same time.

#### INFORMATION

**When the air distribution is selected in the direction of windshield, both driver and passenger side air flow will be directed towards the windshield.**

## 8.2.4 Temperature Control

The temperature can be adjusted individually for driver and passenger side using the buttons on the control display. The temperature can be adjusted to between 16°C and 29°C.

The driver side temperature settings will be applied to the rear seats.

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible.

**Control Display → Home Page → Climate Control → Front**



1. Driver side temperature control
2. Passenger side temperature control

### Adjusting air temperature

Tap the temperature adjustment button (1) or (2) on the control display to set driver or front passenger side temperature.

If the HI or LO appears on the display buttons, the system is operating at the maximum heating or cooling mode.

#### INFORMATION

**The AUTO mode will not work when maximum cooling or heating is activated.**

## 8.2.5 Blower Control

### Front row seats

The blower speed can be adjusted in several levels using buttons on the control display.



- Tap the button (1) to decrease the blower speed.
- Tap the button (2) to increase the blower speed.

#### INFORMATION

**If the blower speed is adjusted manually, the AUTO mode will be deactivated.**

#### WARNING

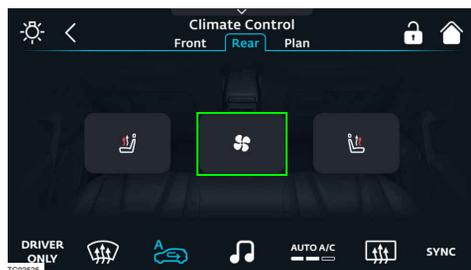
**If the blower is turned Off completely, climate control will not work, which may cause fogging on the inside of the windows.**

### Rear row seats

The blower speed for rear row seats can be activated or deactivated using the control display. The driver's side settings will be applicable for the rear blower speed.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Climate Control → Rear**



- Tap on the button to activate/deactivate the blower for rear row.

#### INFORMATION

**If the AUTO mode is activated and no passenger is detected in the rear row, blower for rear row will be automatically deactivated.**

- **Rear air vent must be checked physically if air flow is not sufficient.**

### 8.2.6 Climate Control Features



1. DRIVER ONLY mode
2. A/C MAX
3. Windshield heater (if equipped)
4. AUTO mode
5. SYNC mode

#### DRIVER ONLY

When the driver only mode is selected, climate control is activated for the driver side only. When activated, it helps to reduce the energy consumption when no passenger is sitting on the passenger seat.

The feature can be activated/deactivated using the Driver Only button (1) on the control display.

#### INFORMATION

- **If the passenger side temperature or air distribution is adjusted using the control display, then the Driver Only mode will be deactivated.**
- **When the Driver Only mode is activated, the system may provide airflow to the passenger and rear areas for effective heating/cooling.**

#### WARNING

**There is a risk of an accident due to vision impairment because of fogging on the inside of the windows. It is the driver's responsibility to use the "Driver Only" function only when the situation allows to do so.**

#### A/C MAX

When the feature is activated the vehicle interior is cooled with maximum power. The climate control temperature is set to low and the blower speed is high. The air recirculation mode is activated.

The feature can be activated using the A/C MAX button (2) on the control display.

#### INFORMATION

**The A/C Max mode will be deactivated if any other climate control setting is changed.**

#### Windshield heater (if equipped)

Activating the feature by using the windshield heater button (3) on the control display helps to melt ice or snow formed on the windshield.

#### AUTO mode

The AUTO mode ensures a comfortable climate that can be adjusted with set temperatures and individual settings. The AUTO mode automatically adjusts airflow and air distribution to reach the set temperature as quickly as possible.

The AUTO mode takes rear seat occupancy into account. If no passenger is detected in the rear, air flow will be deactivated for rear seats.

The AUTO mode will restart after each journey with the last stored climate control setting.

#### Switching AUTO mode On

Press the AUTO button (4) on the control display to activate the AUTO mode.

There are the following three pre-configured AUTO modes:

- AUTO - LOW
- AUTO - MID
- AUTO - HIGH

The air flow is optimized by the climate control system to ensure optimal cooling as per the selected mode.

The AUTO modes can be toggled using the control display.



#### INFORMATION

- **The AUTO mode is deactivated each time when you manually adjust the temperature, blower speed or air distribution of the climate control system.**

- **When the AUTO mode is deactivated using the AUTO button (4), the climate control will operate with the last climate control settings.**

### SYNC Mode

When the SYNC mode is activated, the driver's side climate control settings are applied to passenger's and the rear side.

The SYNC mode can be activated/deactivated using the SYNC button (5) on the control display.

#### INFORMATION

**The SYNC mode is deactivated if the passenger side settings are changed manually.**

### 8.2.7 Adjusting Air Vents

### 8.2.8 Tips to Operate Climate Control

#### General tips

1. If you use the air recirculation mode for a long time, the windows may fog up.
2. Regardless of the air distribution setting, you can feel a small amount of air coming out of the footwell.
3. Do not block the air intake area. Remove snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield to avoid.



4. At high outside temperatures, ventilate the vehicle before starting your journey and drive a short distance with the windows open to assist the air conditioning system.
5. To quickly cool the vehicle interior, use the A/C max function.
6. If you feel the climate control system noise is louder than you prefer, reduce the blower speed manually.

7. The air conditioning compressor not only cools the vehicle interior of the car but also cools the high-voltage battery. Therefore, in hot weather, the air conditioner compressor may turn On even when you turned it Off. This is normal as the system's priority is to keep the high-voltage battery cool and within the optimal temperature range to support longevity and optimal performance.
8. Even when the vehicle is not in use, howling noises and water circulation sounds may be heard. These noises are normal and occur when the internal cooling system is turned On to support various vehicle functions.
9. Condensation from the cooling system can drip and form a puddle of water under the vehicle. This is normal and does not mean there is a leak.
10. The air conditioning compressor and radiator fan may turn On and make noise even when the outside temperature is cold and the vehicle is heating or fast charging as the vehicle is designed to maximize efficiency.

#### Automatic climate control

1. Air flow is directed towards the windshield and foot area if the AUTO mode is selected during cold outside temperatures.
2. If the AUTO mode is selected when the outside temperature is greater than the vehicle interior, air recirculation mode is activated to maximize the cooling. The system may reduce the blower speed until the air cools.
3. Depending on the selected temperature, the automatic climate control system heats or cools down the vehicle interior as quickly as possible.
4. It is necessary to open air vents to operate the climate control system efficiently.

### 8.3 Defrost

#### 8.3.1 Overview

#### ⚠ WARNING

**Poor visibility through windows, windshield, and rear window increases the risk of collisions and accidents that can result in serious injury.**

- **Before driving, always ensure all the windows, windshield, and rear window are free from condensation, ice, and snow.**

- **Adjust the heating, air conditioning, and rear window heating to prevent condensation from forming on the windows.**

The defrost function can be controlled using the control display.



1. Max defrost
2. Rear window heating
3. Windshield heater (if equipped)

### 8.3.2 Max Defrost

The function is used to quickly remove condensation and ice from the windows. When turned On, the air flow is directed towards the windshield and the front door windows.

When the max defrost is tapped twice, the system reverts to the previous climate control settings.

#### Activating/Deactivating the max defrost function

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Climate Control → Front**



- Tap on the max defrost button to activate/deactivate the max defrost.

### 8.3.3 Rear Window Heating

The rear window heating function is used to quickly remove condensation and ice from the rear window.

#### ATTENTION

- **There is a risk of component damage if a sharp object or window cleaner with abrasives is used to clean the rear window and mirrors. The conductors bonded to the rear glass and mirror can get damaged.**
- **Do not adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place as there is risk of damage to the mirror glass while adjusting.**

#### Activating/Deactivating the rear window heating

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Climate Control → Front**



- Tap on the rear window heating button to activate/deactivate the rear window heating.

After 15 minutes, the rear window heating will automatically deactivate.

#### INFORMATION

**When the max defrost is activated and the outside temperature is below or equal to 15°C, then outside mirror heating and rear window heating are activated automatically. (Refer to 8.3.2 Max Defrost )**

#### INFORMATION

- **The rear window heating is activated or deactivated when the outside temperature is below 30°C and either the outside mirror heating or windshield heater is activated or deactivated.**
- **If the rear window heating function is active and the outside temperature is equal to or above 31 °C, it will automatically deactivate and activate again once the outside temperature is equal to or less than 30°C.**

### 8.3.4 Windshield Heater (if equipped)

The windshield heater function quickly removes misting and ice from the windshield. It also helps to eliminate condensation on the windshield glass and improve visibility.

The windshield heater function can be activated/deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Climate Control → Front**



- Tap on the windshield heater button to activate or deactivate the windshield heater.

After 15 minutes, the windshield heater will automatically deactivate.

#### INFORMATION

**When the max defrost is activated and the outside temperature is below or equal to 15°C, then the windshield heater, outside mirror heating, and rear window heating are activated automatically. (Refer to [8.3.2 Max Defrost](#) )**

#### INFORMATION

- **The windshield heater is activated or deactivated when the outside temperature is below 30°C and either the outside mirror heating or rear window heating is activated or deactivated.**
- **If the windshield heater function is active and the outside temperature is equal to or above 31°C, it will automatically deactivate and activate again once the outside temperature is equal to or less than 30°C.**

### 8.4 Air Quality Control

#### 8.4.1 Overview

The air filter improves the quality of air in your vehicle interior by trapping dust, pollen, and other pollutants. The vehicle is equipped with the air quality sensor, which allows the climate control system to improve the air quality in vehicle interior automatically.

#### INFORMATION

- **Cabin air filter needs periodic replacement. Refer to [10.1 Maintenance Schedule](#) .**
- **If low air velocity and constant bad smell are perceived, it is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service for filter replacement without waiting for periodic maintenance.**

#### 8.4.2 Recirculation Control

The recirculation function offers the possibility to choose between getting fresh outside air and recycling the inside air from the vehicle interior.

When air recirculation mode is turned On, the outside air cannot enter the vehicle interior. The air in the vehicle interior is then recirculated.

The following are the recirculation modes in the vehicle:

1. Auto recirculation
2. Manual recirculation
3. Fresh air/No recirculation

When the AUTO recirculation mode is activated, the system switches between the fresh air and recirculation automatically depending on the outside air quality. The system will turn Off the recirculation mode automatically to prevent condensation depending on the outside air quality.

#### 8.4.3 Activating/Deactivating the Recirculation Mode

The user can activate/deactivate the recirculation mode manually using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Climate Control**



- Tap on the recirculation button to switch between the different modes.

### INFORMATION

**The air recirculation mode turns Off when the defrost function is turned On.**

## 8.5 Departure Plan

### 8.5.1 Overview

#### WARNING

**There is a risk of serious injury or even death due to exposure to extreme cold or heat in the vehicle. Never leave a person or children unattended in the vehicle.**

### INFORMATION

**When the departure plan is active, the high-voltage battery state of charge may be reduced even if the charging plug is connected.**

The departure plan function can be used to heat, ventilate or cool the cabin air to the set temperature when the vehicle is parked. The system will activate the climate control system depending upon the requirement. The climate control system activates 15 minutes before the departure time. The climate control system continues to operate 10 minutes after the departure time unless the vehicle is not turned Off.

Using departure plan function when the charging plug is connected will reduce the climate control demand while driving the vehicle.

When the charging plug is connected to the vehicle, you can also set the target high-voltage battery state of charge before departure.

The departure plan can be set to repeat periodically or for a single instance.

Departure plan function can activate/deactivate the below functions:

- Climate control

- Windshield heater (if equipped)
- Seat heating (if equipped)
- Outside mirror heating (if equipped)

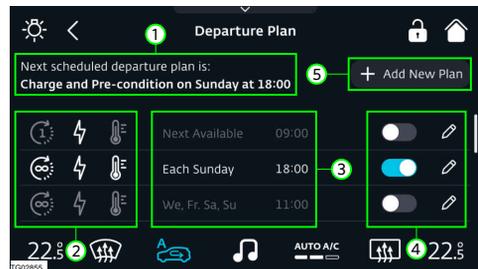
### Operating requirements:

- Vehicle is turned Off
- The high-voltage battery is sufficiently charged or charging plug is connected
- All of the windows must be completely closed
- All of the seats must be unoccupied

Departure plan status can be viewed on the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Climate Control → Plan**



1. Upcoming departure plan
2. Repeat, charging and temperature preference
3. Weekday and time information
4. Edit and activation/deactivation control
5. Add new plan

### 8.5.2 Display Icons

Icon	Description
	Departure plan repeat once active
	Departure plan repeat once passive
	Departure plan set with target state of charge of the high-voltage battery
	Departure plan set without target state of charge of the high-voltage battery

	Departure plan set with target cabin temperature
	Departure plan set without target cabin temperature
	Departure plan always repeat active
	Departure plan always repeat passive

### Activating/Deactivating the departure plan

The previously stored departure plans can be activated/deactivated using the control display.

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Climate Control → Plan**

2. Tap on the On/Off button of desired departure plan to activate/deactivate.

### 8.5.3 Using Departure Plan

#### Adding new departure plan

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Climate Control → Plan**

2. Tap on the "Add New Plan" button.
3. Select to "Climate" and/or "Charging" and set the target temperature and target state of charge.
4. Select the desired "Weekday" and "Time."
5. Tap on the "Repeat" button to repeat the set departure plan.
6. Tap on the "Save" button to set the departure plan.

#### INFORMATION

- **Target high-voltage battery state of charge can be set in between 40% and 100% when the charging plug is connected.**
- **Target cabin temperature can be set in between 15°C and 30°C.**

#### Editing/Deleting the departure plan

1. Go to:

**Control Display → Climate Control → Plan**

2. Tap on the "Edit" button of the desired schedule from the list.
3. Change the desired fields in the set schedule and tap on "Save."  
or  
Tap on the "Delete" button to delete the selected schedule.

# 9 Storage Compartments

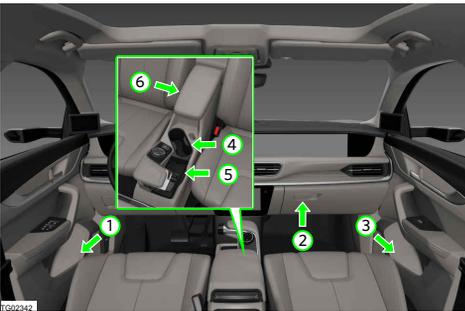
## 9.1 Storage Locations

### 9.1.1 Safety Instructions

**WARNING**

- *There is a risk of personal injury from hot beverages spilling in the event of a sudden braking or vehicle maneuver. Always use beverage containers with a lid. Always store beverage containers securely in the cupholder.*
- *There is a risk of accident increases if the objects slide into the driver's footwell. Make sure to stow the objects securely so that they cannot get into the driver's footwell or the front passenger's footwell.*
- *Always keep the stowage compartments closed while the vehicle is in motion.*
- *Closed drink bottles can explode in the vehicle in extreme heat or burst in extremely cold temperatures. Never leave closed drink bottles in an extremely hot or extremely cold vehicle for extended periods.*
- *There is a risk of personal injury or material damage if sharp objects are stored in the front seat backrest pockets. Always cover the sharp objects with a suitable cover or cloth.*

### 9.1.2 Front Row Storage Locations



1. Driver door storage compartment
2. Glove box
3. Front passenger door storage compartment
4. Front cup holder
5. Wireless charging mat
6. Front armrest

### 9.1.3 Second Row Storage Locations



1. Front seat backrest pocket (if equipped)
2. Rear door storage compartment

### Coat hook



- Coat hook

A coat hook is provided on each side near the rear handle for hanging lightweight clothes.

**WARNING**

*There is a risk of personal injury or material damage in the event of a sudden braking or vehicle maneuver when sharp or heavy objects are hung on the coat hook. Do not hang sharp or heavy objects.*

**ATTENTION**

*There is a risk of component damage. Do not hang heavy clothes or objects on the coat hook.*

## 9.2 Glove Box Storage

### 9.2.1 Overview

**WARNING**

*There is a risk of injury. If the glove box is left open, objects in the glove box may be thrown around the interior during the journey in the event of an accident*

or braking maneuvers. Close the glove box immediately after using it.

## 9.2.2 Opening and Closing the Glove Box



The glove box provides storage space for small items.

### Opening:

Pull the latch towards left to open the glove box.

### Closing:

Close the glove box by pressing on it.

## 9.3 Center Console Storage

### 9.3.1 Overview

#### **WARNING**

*Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.*

When the accessory mode is turned On, you may be able to use multiple power sources for external devices, depending on the vehicle equipment.

### 9.3.2 Wireless Charging (if equipped)



You can charge your mobile phone wirelessly using the wireless charging mat at center console.

To use feature, ensure that:

- The vehicle is switched On.
- The feature is activated.
- The mobile phone is suitable for wireless charging.

To charge mobile phone wirelessly:

- Place the mobile phone as close to the center of mat as possible with the display facing upwards.

When laying the mobile phone, make sure there are no objects between it and the wireless charging mat.

During charging, the surface of the charging mat and the mobile phone can become hot. At higher temperatures, the charge current may be reduced to prevent the mobile phone from overheating. In exceptional cases, the charging process is temporarily interrupted.

### Activating/deactivating wireless charging

The function can be activated/deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

**Control Display → Main Controls → Phone Charge**

Or

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Page (2) → Wireless Phone Charge**



- Tap on the wireless charge output button to activate/deactivate the function.

#### **ATTENTION**

*Do not place items with a magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip, for example passports, parking tickets, transportation passes or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage may occur to the magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip.*

## ⚠ WARNING

**Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. Implant users should consult a medical specialist if they have any questions.**

## INFORMATION

**A mobile phone with a case can be charged with the wireless charging mat, but the wireless charging performance may be affected.**

### 9.3.3 USB Ports

The USB ports are labeled with the symbol. When vehicle is switched On you can use USB ports for charging purpose only.

#### Front USB port



There are two USB ports under the center console armrest.

- Type C port
- Can be used for charging devices
- Charge current: max. 5 A
- Power output: 15 W

#### Rear USB port (if equipped)



- Type C port

- Can be used for charging devices
- Charge current: max. 5 A
- Power output: 15 W

## 9.4 Armrest & Cup Holders

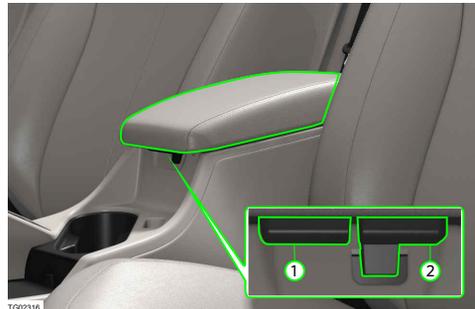
### 9.4.1 Front Armrest

## ⚠ WARNING

**Objects in the armrest storage may be thrown around the interior during the journey, for example, in the event of an accident or when braking or taking evasive action. There is a risk of injury. Immediately close the armrest cover after using it.**

Under the front armrest on the center console, there are two storage spaces:

- Stowage bin
- Jumbo box with cooling



1. Stowage bin lock knob
2. Jumbo box lock knob

#### Opening and closing storage bin

- To open pull stowage bin lock knob and lift the armrest cover.
- To close push the armrest cover until it is latched.

#### Opening and closing jumbo box

- To open, pull lock knob and lift the armrest cover.
- To close push the armrest cover until it is latched.

#### Jumbo box cooling (if equipped)

When the A/C is operational, the jumbo box cooling feature can be utilized to cool drinks or food.



- Rotate the vent wheel counterclockwise or clockwise to turn On/Off the cooling.

Turn Off the vent when cooling is not required.

The jumbo box cooling gets air from the rear row air ducts. If climate control is in the AUTO mode and no passenger is detected in the rear row, jumbo box cooling will be automatically deactivated. Turn it On manually using the control display. (Refer to [8.2.5 Blower Control](#) )

#### 9.4.2 Cup Holders

##### **⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not put any hot beverages in the cupholder while the vehicle is moving. Hot beverages could spill, which increases the risk of injury.**
- **Do not use breakable beverage containers as there is risk of injury in the event of an accident.**

##### **⚠ ATTENTION**

**Always use beverage containers in the cup holders with a lid. Otherwise, the liquid inside could spill and cause damage to the vehicle equipment.**

#### Front cupholder



There are two cup holders in the center console.

#### Rear cupholder (if equipped)

To use rear cup holders, fold down rear armrest.



## 9.5 Trunk Storage

### 9.5.1 Overview

The vehicle has flexible trunk storage capacity that makes it possible to load and secure large objects. By folding down the backrest in the second row of seat, the storage capacity of the vehicle increases considerably. Use the tie bracket hook or the trunk hook to secure objects and the trunk curtain roller blind to help conceal the load.

##### **⚠ WARNING**

- **The trunk curtain roller blind is not a surface for storing objects. Objects placed on the trunk curtain roller blind increase the risk of injury to all vehicle occupants during sudden driving or braking maneuvers or in the event of an accident.**
- **Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Always stow objects securely in the trunk storage and secure them at the tie bracket hook. Use straps suitable for heavy objects.**
- **The vehicle's handling characteristics may change depending on the weight and distribution of the load. Adapt your driving style to the changed vehicle handling.**
- **Never secure a child safety seat to the tie bracket hook.**
- **Never exceed the permitted axle and load and vehicle weight.**
- **There is a risk of fatal injury. Never leave your vehicle unattended, especially if the tailgate is open. Children could enter the trunk storage and close the tailgate from the inside.**

- **Never transport passengers in the trunk storage. Every passenger must be secured with the safety belts in the vehicle.**

**ATTENTION**

*There is a risk of component damage if any liquid is spilled into the trunk storage area. Always stow containers filled with liquid securely and make sure they are leakproof.*

**INFORMATION**

*The tire pressure must be adapted to the load.*

**9.5.2 Loading**

**Recommendations on loading**

- Load objects in the cargo compartment against the backrest whenever possible.
- Wrap protective material around any sharp corners and edges on the objects.
- Heavy objects: stow as far forward as possible, low down and directly behind the rear seat backrests. If there are no passengers on the rear seat, insert both outer seat belts into the respective opposite buckles.
- Do not stack objects above the upper edge of the backrests.
- Do not use elastic belts or straps to tie down an object.

**9.5.3 Trunk Curtain Roller Blind**

The trunk curtain roller blind can be used to conceal the objects in the trunk storage.

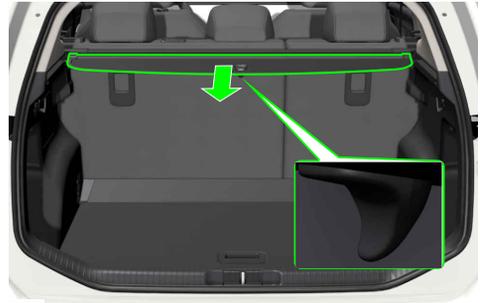
**Installing the trunk curtain roller blind**



TO002324

1. Position the roller blind into the recess.
2. Press on the edges of the roller blind until it is latched.

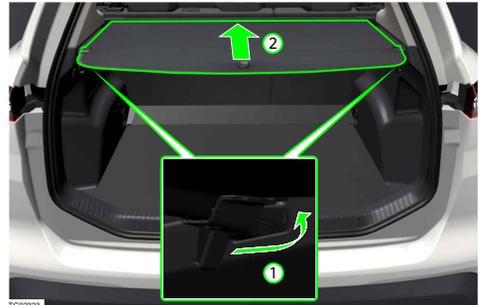
**Opening trunk curtain roller blind**



TO002322

1. Grasp the handle and pull out the roller blind completely.
2. Press the attaching pins on the rear corners of the roller blind into the grooves in the side panels and release the roller blind.

**Retracting the trunk curtain roller blind**



TO002323

1. Lift the roller blind handle and pull it rearward slightly to release the attaching pins from their grooves. Allow the roller blind to retract.

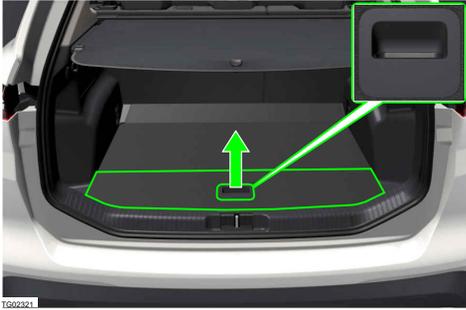
**ATTENTION**

*Do not place objects on top of the trunk curtain roller blind.*

**9.5.4 Trunk Storage Box**

**ATTENTION**

*Trunk storage box can be removed from its usage area. If the trunk storage box is removed, loads placed on the trunk floor shall not exceed 50 kg.*



The tire repair kit is located in the trunk storage box.

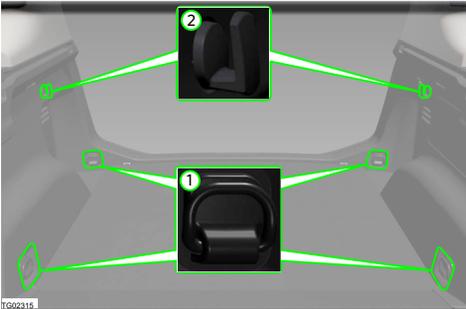
### Opening trunk storage box

Pull on the handle and fold the trunk floor forward.

### Closing trunk storage box

Press the trunk floor down until it engages.

## 9.5.5 Anchor Points



1. Tie bracket hook
2. Trunk hook

### Tie bracket hook (if equipped)

There are "4" tie bracket hooks on side trim panel in the trunk storage compartment to secure pieces of luggage and objects. It can be used in combination with lashing straps, tensioning straps, or retaining straps.

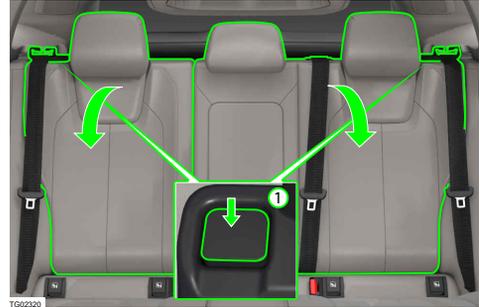
### Trunk hook

There are "2" trunk hooks on the side trim panel in the trunk storage compartment. The trunk hook helps to keep shopping bags in place and prevents them from falling over and spilling their contents in the trunk storage.

### ⚠ ATTENTION

**Only use the trunk hook to hold lightweight objects or bags.**

## 9.5.6 Folding Rear Seat Backrest



The rear seat backrest is split into two sections. The two sections can be folded forward individually to increase trunk storage capacity.

### ⚠ WARNING

- ***There is a risk of entrapment when folding down the rear seat backrest. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Before folding down, make sure that the area of movement of the rear seat backrest and the headrest is kept clear.***
- ***Always ensure backrest is correctly locked to prevent objects from the sliding forward during sudden braking or in the event of an accident.***

### ⚠ ATTENTION

- ***Once the rear seat backrest has been folded down, the striker protrudes into the interior. There is a risk of material damage. When the rear seat backrest is folded down, watch out for the protruding striker and keep this area clear.***
- ***The armrest in the center seat must be raised before the rear seat backrest is folded down.***
- ***Always make sure that the seat belt is positioned correctly after folding up the seat backrest.***

### Folding down the backrest

1. Push the headrests down.
2. Push button (1) on left or right backrest and pull forward the required backrest to fold down.

### Folding up the backrest

1. Move the backrest upward/rearward.
2. Press the backrest until it locks into position. Make sure that the red label on the button (1) is not visible.
3. Adjust the headrest as required.

## 9.5.7 12V Power Outlet

### **⚠ WARNING**

- **Never connect multiple plugs, adapters or extension cords to the 12V power outlet. This could override the outlet's safety functions.**
- **Never let children play or tamper with the 12V power outlet or attempt to insert any objects into it. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle when the 12V power outlet is active.**
- **Be aware that connected devices may generate heat and become very hot.**



You can connect electrical accessories to the 12V power outlet in trunk compartment. The power usage from the sockets must not exceed a total of 120 watts. Do not connect multiple devices to the sockets in the vehicle at the same time. The 12V power outlet is labeled with the 12V symbol.

### **⚠ ATTENTION**

***If metallic objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of material damage. Always keep the power outlet covered when not in use.***

## 10 Maintenance

### 10.1 Maintenance Schedule

#### 10.1.1 Overview

Periodic maintenance is essential to get optimum performance from your vehicle. Inadequate or neglected maintenance of your vehicle may lead to major repair expenses. To keep the vehicle reliable and safe, always follow the Togg specified maintenance schedule.

Failure to perform scheduled maintenance and regular inspection of your vehicle may result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

We recommend that you always use Togg approved parts and get your vehicle serviced by a Togg authorized service. If counterfeit parts are used in your vehicle, optimum vehicle performance is not guaranteed as they may not meet Togg part manufacturing standards.

#### WARNING

*There is a risk of serious injury, burns, or electric shock from high-voltage components. It is recommended you first choose Togg authorized services for high-voltage battery service. Never attempt to remove or modify the high-voltage components.*

#### 10.1.2 Service Interval Assist

The service interval assist provides information about the next vehicle service due.

The recommended service interval is based on the normal operation of the vehicle. It may require performing maintenance work more often if the vehicle is operated under load conditions.

#### **Resetting service interval**

Togg authorized service will reset the service interval after performing the service.

#### 10.1.3 Maintenance Table

## T10X Scheduled Maintenance Table

#	Category	Topic	2 Years		4 Years		6 Years		8 Years		10 Years		
			40000 KM	80000 KM	120000 KM	160000 KM	200000 KM	200000 KM					
1	Air Conditioning System	Air conditioner pollen cabin filter replacement	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	
		Air conditioner performance test and general inspection	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
2	Cooling system	Coolant level and density inspection	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
		Inspect the windshield wipers and adjusting the sprinker	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
3	Electrical System	Inspect and adjusting the headlamp adjustment if necessary	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
		12V Battery health check	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
4	Brake system	Front and rear brake pads and discs wear check, replace if necessary	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
		Visual inspection of the brake system for leaks and damage	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
5	General Controls	Checking the brake fluid level and humidity	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
		Brake Fluid replacement	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
6	Suspension System	Windshield cleaning fluid level and density control	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
		Under-vehicle visual inspection	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
7	Steering System	Visual inspection of Axle/Shock Absorber/Tie rod end/Ball Joint/Steering boot for leaks and damage	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
		Function checks; Air conditioning, windows, interior/exterior lighting, signal, horn, seat belts	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
8	Body Controls	Electronic system control and software update	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
		Visual inspection of all suspension parts and connections, replacement if necessary*	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
9	High Voltage System	Visual inspection of tires for wear and damage, measurement of tread depths, rotation or replacement if necessary*	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
		Checking and adjusting tire pressures	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
10	Paint	Tire balancing if necessary (Additional charge)	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
		Checking the Wheel alignment, adjustment if necessary	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
10	Paint	Visual inspection of body and attachments for damage and corrosion	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
		Control of HV components (Charging cable, HV installation and HV components functional test)	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
10	Paint	Paint inspection, repair if necessary*	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN	

\*Some parts may be required to be replaced after checks. Labor and parts costs can be charged additionally.

R: Replace IN:Inspect

## 10.2 Low-voltage Battery - 12V

### 10.2.1 Overview

Along with the high-voltage battery, the vehicle has a 12-volt low-voltage battery. The low-voltage battery supplies power to vehicle electronic systems.

For more information regarding low-voltage battery, it is recommended to contact a Togg authorized service.

### 10.2.2 Safety Instructions

#### WARNING

- **Touching conductive components can result in an electric shock. There is a risk of injury or even death. Do not touch any components that could be conductive.**
- **Low-voltage batteries generate hydrogen gas, which is flammable and explosive.**
- **Low-voltage battery fluid contains sulfuric acid. Do not allow low-voltage battery fluid to come into contact with eyes, skin, fabrics or painted surfaces.**
- **If contact with low-voltage battery fluid occurs, flush the affected area immediately with water. Seek for medical help immediately if your eyes are affected.**

#### Safety symbols on low-voltage battery

Icon	Description
	Read instruction from Owner's Manual.
	Fire, sparks, and smoking are prohibited.
	Risk of explosion. Do not seal any openings on the low-voltage battery.
	Keep children away.
	Risk of acid burns. Avoid contact with the skin, eyes or clothing.
	Wear protective goggles.

### 10.2.3 Charging

Your vehicle has a high-voltage to low-voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the low-voltage battery charged by the high-voltage battery. If the low-voltage battery level is low, the high-voltage battery transfers energy to the 12 volt low-voltage battery when the vehicle is Off.

#### ATTENTION

**Do not attempt to charge the low-voltage battery from the vehicle's 12-volt power outlet. It can overload and damage electrical components. There is a risk of material damage.**

### 10.2.4 Replacing Low-voltage Battery

If the low-voltage battery needs to be replaced, it is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service.

#### Display icons

Icon	Description
	Low-voltage battery state of health low (Icon is steady)
	Low-voltage battery error (Icon is steady)

### 10.2.5 Disposing Low-voltage Battery

Low-voltage battery must be recycled in an ecofriendly manner at the end of its service life. It is recommended to consult a Togg authorized service or similar authorized battery collecting points if you are uncertain about the disposal procedure of this type of waste.

## 10.3 Fuses and Relays

### 10.3.1 Overview

#### ATTENTION

**There is a risk of fire or material damage if a fuse is replaced with a higher rating. Never replace a fuse with one having a higher rating or material other than the fuse.**

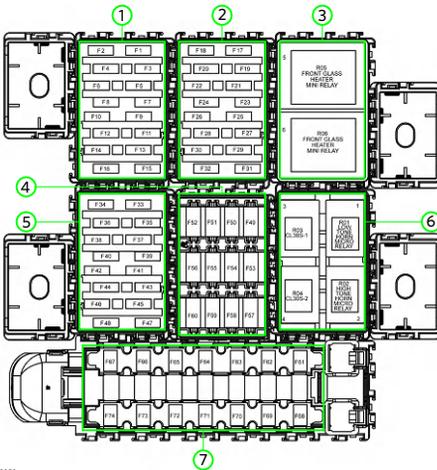
The fuses protect electrical systems against excessive current. When a device does not work, you must check the fuse element inside the blade fuse for a break/melt.

### 10.3.2 Cabin Fuse Box

This fuse box is located near the steering column. To access the cabin fuse box remove the cabin fuse box cover.



TG02058



TG02059

1. Cabin Mini FB1
2. Cabin Mini FB2
3. Cabin Mini RM-1
4. Cabin ATO FB1
5. Cabin FB3
6. Cabin Micro RM-1
7. J Module Cabin

#### Cabin Mini FB1

Cavity Number	Load	Fuse Rating (amp)
F1	Infotainment Domain Control Computer M and A	20A

F2	Infotainment Domain Control Computer A	15A
F3	Infotainment Domain Control Computer A	15A
F4	Infotainment Domain Control Computer A	15A
F5	Body Control Module B	10A
F6	Body Control Module A	10A
F7	Child Presence Detection, Child Presence Detection 2	2A
F8	HVAC Box B	7.5A
F9	On Board Diagnostic Socket	10A
F10	BCM (Body Control Module) A	15A
F11	Radio Frequency Receiver	2A
F12	Air Quality Sensor	2A
F13	Body Control Module B	3A
F14	Low Tone Horn	10A
F15	High Tone Horn	10A
F16	Outside Rear View Mirror Right	7.5A

#### Cabin Mini FB2

Cavity Number	Load	Fuse Rating (amp)
F17	High-voltage battery Advanced A	5A
F18	E Drive Unit Rear A, OBC (On Board Charger) 22KW A, DC-DC Converter B, E Drive Unit Front A	3A
F19	Head Light High-Low Beam Left	20A
F20	Head Light High-Low Beam Right	20A

F21	Cluster Infotainment Display D	10A
F22	Interior lighting	5A
F23	Cluster Infotainment Display C	10A
F24	Display Second Control B	10A
F25	Front Door Outer Handle Keyless Left and Right	2A
F26	Driver Switch Panel B	2A
F27	Rotary Control Unit	2A
F28	Gear Selector Switch	2A
F29	Column Electrical Assembly E, Column Electrical Assembly I	2A
F30	Temperature Cabin Sensor	2A
F31	Brake Light Switch	2A
F32	CGU (Central Gateway) A	2A

#### Cabin Mini RM-1

Relay code	Load
R06	Front Glass Heater Mini Relay

R06	Front Glass Heater Mini Relay
-----	-------------------------------

#### Cabin ATO FB1

Cavity Number	Load	Fuse Rating (amp)
F49	Windshield Wiper System Front	40A
F50	Seat Driver ECU A	30A
F51	Seat Driver ECU A	30A
F52	Seat Co-Driver ECU A	30A
F53	Seat Co-Driver ECU A	30A
F54	Assembly Windshield Heated Connector B	40A
F55	Assembly Windshield Heated Connector A	40A
F56	Body Control Module A	30A
F57	HVAC Box B	35A
F58	Body Control Module C	2A
F59	Body Control Module A	2A
F60	Column Electrical Assembly E	2A

#### Cabin FB3

Cavity Number	Load	Fuse Rating (amp)
F33	Smart Access System Central Module	2A
F34	BCM (Body Control Module) B	30A
F35	Window Regulator Front Door Left	30A
F36	Window Regulator Front Door Right	30A
F37	Camera Infrared Driver B	2A
F38	Rain Light Sensor	2A
F39	Pyrofuse	10A
F40	Radar Short-range Front Left	2A
F41	Radar Short-range Front Right	2A
F42	Camera Mirror System Right Display Monitor C	2A

F43	Camera Mirror System Left Display Monitor C	2A
F44	Inside Rear View Mirror Chromic	2A
F45	Wireless Charging Mat	5A
F46	Body Control Module A	2A
F47	E Drive Unit Rear A	5A
F48	Telematic Control Unit A	2A

### Cabin Micro RM1

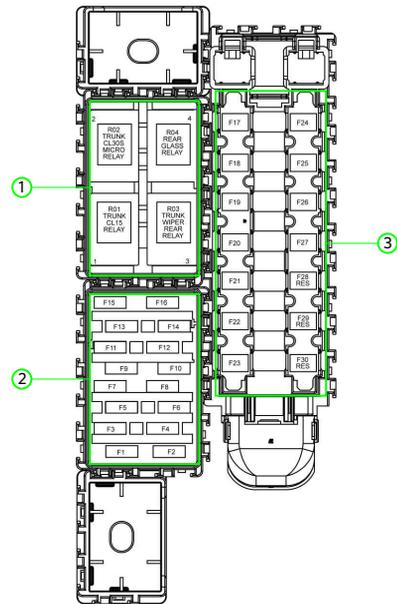
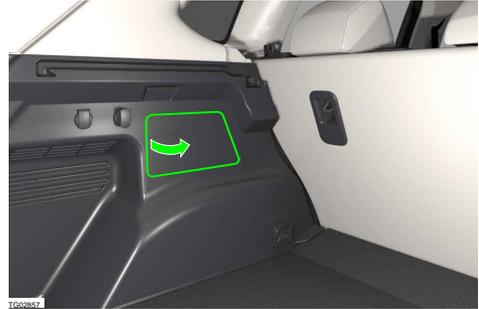
Relay Code	Load
R01	Low Tone Horn Micro Relay
R02	High Tone Horn (Alarm) Micro Relay
R03	CL30S-1 Relay
R04	CL30S-2 Relay

### J Module Cabin

Cavity Number	Load	Fuse Rating (amp)
F61	Cabin Mini FB1	60A
F62	Cabin Mini FB1	60A
	Cabin Mini FB2	
	Cabin Mini FB3	
F63	Cabin Mini FB1	60A
	Cabin Mini FB3	
	Cabin ATO FB1	
F64	Cabin Mini FB1	60A
	Cabin ATO FB1	
F65	Cabin Mini FB3	60A
F66	Cabin ATO FB1	60A
F67	Cabin ATO FB1	60A
F68	Cabin Mini FB1	30A
	Cabin Mini FB2	
	Cabin Mini FB3	
F69	Low Tone Horn Micro Relay (R01)	20A
	High Tone Horn(Alarm) Micro Relay (R02)	
F70	Cl30S Relay (R03)	30A
F71	Cl30S Relay (R04)	30A

F72	Front Glass Heater Mini Relay (R06)	40A
F73	Front Glass Heater Mini Relay (R05)	40A
F74	Cabin Mini FB2	50A
	Cabin ATO FB1	

### 10.3.3 Trunk Fuse Box



TG02858

1. Trunk micro FM1
2. Trunk mini FB1
3. Trunk J module

### Trunk Micro FM1

Relay Code	Load
------------	------

R01	Trunk CL15 Relay
R02	Trunk CL30S Relay
R03	Trunk Wiper Rear Relay
R04	Rear Glass Relay

### Trunk Mini FB1

Cavity Number	Load	Fuse Rating (amp)
F17	Trunk CL15 Relay (R01)	20A
F18	Tailgate ECU A	30A
F19	Window Regulator Rear Door Left	30A
F20	Window Regulator Rear Door Right	30A
F21	Roller Blind	20A
F22	Trunk CI30s Relay (R02)	30A
F23	Tailgate ECU A	30A
F24	Trunk Wiper Rear Relay (R03)	20A
	Rear Glass Relay (R04)	
	Trunk Mini FB1	
F25	Amplifier Audio External A	60A
F26	Rear Glass Relay (R04)	30A
F27	EPC Mainfuse Box J3	40A
	EPC Mainfuse Box J4	
F28	Not used	Reserved
F29	Not used	Reserved
F30	Not used	Reserved

### Trunk J Module

Cavity Number	Load	Fuse Rating (amp)
F1	Steering - Electric Power Steering ECU	5A
	Column Electrical Assembly I	
	Alcohol Interlock	
F2	Wireless Charging Mat	2A
F3	Airbag Control Module A	3A
F4	Vehicle Control Unit K	2A

F5	Camera Front Smart	2A
F6	Ultrasonic Sensor ECU A	2A
F7	E Drive Unit Rear A	2A
F8	External Sound Generator	2A
	E Drive Unit Front A	
	Brake Pad Wear Indicator Rear	
	Brake Booster and Modulator A	
F9	Radar Long-range Front	2A
F10	Dual Port USB Charger	5A
F11	Radar Short-range Rear Left	2A
F12	Radar Short-range Rear Right	2A
F13	USB Charging Ports	7.5A
F14	12V Power Outlet Trunk	20A
F15	Wiper System Rear	10A
F16	Brake Booster and Modulator B	2A

### 10.3.4 Identifying the Blown Fuse

#### **WARNING**

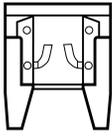
*There is a risk of fire due to short circuit. Do not use metal objects or screwdriver to remove the blown fuse.*

#### **INFORMATION**

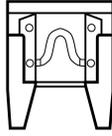
*If any fuse is removed for any reason, it should be refitted properly at its original position.*

If any of the function of the vehicle is not working inspect the corresponding fuse. If the fuse is blown, replace it.

Below is an example of a blown fuse and a good fuse.



①



②

TG02537

1. Blown fuse
2. Good fuse

### Inspecting the fuse

1. Turn Off the vehicle.
2. Remove the cabin fuse box cover.
3. Pull out the fuse.
4. Inspect the fuse. If it has blown, replace it with a spare fuse of the same rating.
5. If the same fuse blows again, this indicates that its system has a problem. It is recommended to contact a Togg authorized workshop for assistance.

### 10.3.5 Inspecting the Fuse

1. Turn off the vehicle.
2. Remove the cabin fuse box cover.
3. Pull out the fuse with the fuse puller.
4. Inspect the fuse. If it has blown, replace it with a spare fuse of the same rating.
5. If the same fuse blows again, this indicated that its system has a problem. Contact a Togg authorized workshop for assistance.

## 10.4 Wheels and Tires

### 10.4.1 Tire Inflation Information

The tire inflation pressure information is located on the driver side B- pillar. The tire pressure applies to all tire sizes and recommended tire makes that have been rated by the vehicle manufacturer as suitable for the vehicle type concerned. The tire inflation pressure should be used as per the respective load conditions. For example, if the vehicle is partially loaded, use the tire inflation pressure specified for a partially loaded vehicle.

	Light Load			Full Load		
	kPa	bar	psi	kPa	bar	psi
225/65 R17 102H	250	2,5	36	250	2,5	36
225/60 R18 100H	260	2,6	38	310	3,1	45
235/50 R19 99H						

TG01423

### 10.4.2 Understanding Tire Specification



TG01428

1. **225:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.
2. **60:** Indicates the ratio of the tire's base width to its sidewall height and is expressed as a percentage.
3. **R:** Indicates a radial type of tire.
4. **18:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches.
5. **100:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that signifies how much weight a tire can carry.
6. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed symbol. The speed symbol denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure.
7. **Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers must also indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

8. **Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the vehicle's tire information placard located on the B-Pillar for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.
9. **Maximum permissible inflation pressure:** Indicates the greatest amount of air pressure that should ever be put in the tire. This limit is set by the tire manufacturer.

### 10.4.3 Tire Age

Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives. In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear.

However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently. You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

Tire age can be determined by production date stamp on the side wall. The 1st and 2nd positions represent the calendar week and the 3rd and 4th positions state the year of manufacture. E.g., If it is (3422) then the date of tire manufacture is 34th week of 2022.

#### **ATTENTION**

**A tire with visible cracks or discoloration should be replaced immediately.**

### 10.4.4 Speed Symbols

A tire's Speed Symbol (SS) indicates the maximum speed for which the tire has been certified and should be at least equivalent to the vehicle's top speed.

Letter Rating	Speed
M	up to 130km/h (81mph)
N	up to 140km/h (87mph)
Q	up to 160km/h (100mph)
R	up to 171km/h (106mph)
S	up to 180km/h (112mph)
T	up to 190km/h (118mph)
U	up to 200km/h (124mph)
H	up to 210km/h (130mph)
V	up to 240km/h (149mph)

W	up to 270km/h (168mph)
Y	up to 299km/h (186mph)

### 10.4.5 Tire Tread



The tires have wear indicator strips running across or parallel to the tread. The letters TWI or Triangle (1) are printed on the side of the tire. When approximately 1.6 mm is left on the tread, these strips (2) become visible and indicate that the tire should be replaced. Tires with less than 1.6 mm tread offer very poor traction. When replacing worn tires, it is recommended that the tire should be identical in type (radial), pattern and size to the one being replaced. Using a tire of the same make (manufacturer) will help prevent alteration of the driving characteristics of the vehicle.

#### **WARNING**

**Insufficient tire tread will result in reduced tire grip. In heavy rain or slush, the risk of hydroplaning is increased, in particular where speed is not adapted to suit the conditions.**

### 10.4.6 Snow Chains

The use of snow chains can help improve traction in winter driving conditions. Togg approved snow socks can also be used to improve traction in winter driving as an alternative to snow chain.

Snow chains can be used on your vehicle with the following restrictions:

#### **ATTENTION**

**For vehicles with AWD or RWD, snow chains should be installed on rear wheels only. Use only manufacturer approved snow chains.**

- If accessory, aftermarket or "custom" tires and wheels are installed and are of a size different than the original tires and wheels, chains in some cases cannot be used. Sufficient clearances between chains and brakes, suspension and body components must be maintained.
- Some strap-on type chains will interfere with brake components and therefore cannot be used.
- If snow chains are installed, the maximum permissible speed is 30 mph (50 km/h).
- Comply with the installation instructions of the snow chain manufacturer.

#### **⚠ ATTENTION**

**Avoid bumps, holes or sharp turns when driving with snow chains.**

**The handling of the vehicle can be adversely affected when driving with chains.**

#### **INFORMATION**

**Check local regulations regarding the use of snow chains before installing.**

### 10.4.7 Tire Damages

Inspect tires regularly for damage, wear, and the presence of foreign bodies.

Vehicle behavior may indicate tire damage or other faults. Make sure there are no vibrations, noises or unusual handling characteristics when the vehicle is in motion.

Damage can be caused by the following situations:

- Driving over kerbs
- Road damage
- Insufficient tire inflation pressure
- Overloading the vehicle
- Incorrect tire storage

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Driving over obstacles, kerbs or damaged road surfaces at high speed can damage the tire. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There is a risk of accident and material damage. If possible, drive around obstacles or drive over them slowly and carefully.**

**There is a risk of accident if the tires are damaged and inflation pressure is reduced. This, in turn, could cause you to lose control of the vehicle. If you suspect tire damage while you are driving, immediately reduce speed and bring the vehicle to a stop. Have**

**the wheels and tires checked by an authorized workshop. If necessary, have the vehicle towed or transported there.**

#### **⚠ ATTENTION**

**Do not repair damaged tires. Have them replaced.**

### 10.4.8 Storing Tires

- After removing wheels, store them in a cool, dry and preferably dark place. Protect the tires from contact with oil, grease or fuel.
- Do not leave tires in plastic bags.
- Remove dirt from the wheels or tires.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**When storing complete wheels (tires mounted on rims), they should be suspended off the floor or placed on their sides on the floor. Tires removed from rims should be stored on their sides or standing upright but should not be suspended.**

### 10.4.9 Changing the Tire and Rim

It is recommended to have the wheels fitted and balanced by an authorized workshop.

Rims and tires recommended by Togg are the best possible combination for your vehicle.

Rim type	Rim Size	Rim Offset	Tire Size
17"	7.5J×17	45	225/65 R17 102H
18"	7.5J×18	45	225/60 R18 100H
19"	8J×19	45	235/50 R19 99H

#### **Tire replacement**

Drive carefully and at moderate speeds for the first approx. 500 km with new tires.

- Only use tires with the same design, size, and as close to the same tread pattern as possible on all four wheels.
- Togg recommends replacing both tires on the same axle at the same time.
- If you would like to use different tires, please note that the tires may perform differently even if they are the same size.

#### **INFORMATION**

**Using non-original tires and/or rims may adversely affect the TPM system and driving safety.**

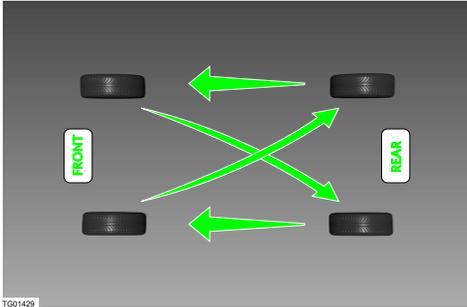
## ⚠ ATTENTION

**It is recommended to replace tires at a Togg authorized service. Damage to the TPM system may occur if the tire is replaced at an unauthorized workshop.**

### Tire rotation

Togg recommends to perform tire rotation at every 10,000 km. Rotating tires at the recommended interval will help tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

The illustration explains the recommended tire rotation pattern.



### Changing a wheel

Wheel changes must always be carried out correctly. The following instructions show how to remove and install a wheel and what is important to keep in mind. Make sure that the tire dimension is approved for use on the vehicle.

## ⚠ WARNING

- **Make sure all the passengers move to a safe location if the tire must be changed near the passing traffic.**
- **Never crawl under or allow any part of your body to be extended under a vehicle supported by a jack.**

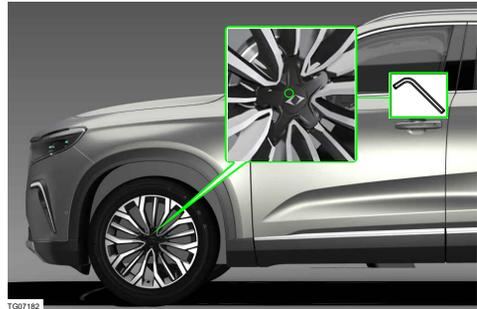
## ⚠ ATTENTION

**Make sure no passenger is present in the vehicle while jacking the vehicle.**

### Removing a wheel

1. Park the vehicle on flat or level surface.
2. Engage the electric parking brake.
3. Turn Off the vehicle.
4. Block the wheels using the chocks to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

5. For models with 19" wheels: Remove the wheel hub cover and slightly loose the wheel bolts.



For models without 19" wheels: Slightly loose the wheel bolts.

6. Use specified jacking points to lift the vehicle using jack. (Refer to [10.5 Vehicle Jacking](#) )
7. Raise the vehicle until the wheel to be changed can move freely. Unscrew the wheel bolts and lift off the wheel.

### Installing a wheel

1. Clean the contact surfaces between the wheel and the wheel hub.
2. Lift the wheel into place. Tighten the wheel bolts securely.
3. Lower the vehicle so that the wheel cannot rotate.
4. Tighten the wheel bolts in a diagonal pattern. It is important to securely tighten the wheel bolts. Torque to 133 Nm with the torque wrench.
5. For models with 19" wheels: Install the wheel hub cover.
6. Inflate the tire to the recommended pressure with the compressor in the trunk and monitor the pressure through the tire pressure monitoring system. (Refer to [4.10 Tire Pressure Monitoring System \(TPMS\)](#) )

## 10.5 Vehicle Jacking

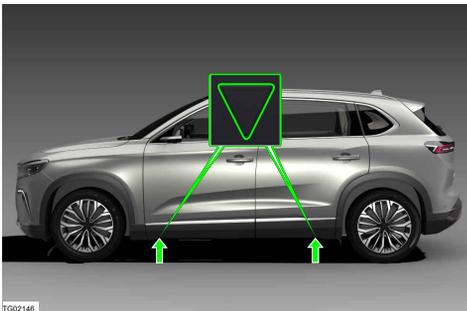
### 10.5.1 Safety Instructions

## ⚠ WARNING

- **To reduce the risk of injury, make sure no one is inside the vehicle before raising it.**
- **Position the vehicle jack only at the designated jacking points on the side sill and align the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle jack could slip and cause an injury if it does not have sufficient hold on the vehicle.**

- **Make sure the vehicle jack is stable. The risk of injury is increased when the ground is slippery or soft, because the vehicle jack could slide or sink.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury, no work should be performed under the vehicle while it is raised.**
- **To reduce the risk of accident, do not start the vehicle or release the electric parking brake.**
- **The jack may damage the vehicle floor and/or the high-voltage battery if used incorrectly. There is a risk of injury or material damage. When extending, make sure that the jack is guided into the designated jacking points. Ensure that no parts of the underbody trim are damaged.**

### 10.5.2 Jacking Points



The triangles in the door protective moulding indicate the jack attachment points/lifting points.

# 11 Breakdown Assistance

## 11.1 eCall (Emergency Call)

### 11.1.1 General Information

The emergency call (eCall) function can be used to request help in the event of an accident or emergency, automatically or manually. The connection is established to a 112 call centre or a third-party service provider. This depends upon the local regulations and the specific mobile network.

The function uses integrated mobile communication in the vehicle which, cannot be deactivated. In highly adverse conditions due to technical reasons, it might not be possible to establish a connection with the 112 call centre.

In an eCall, person and vehicle-related data is transmitted to the 112 call centre in order to determine what rescue measures are required, provided that this is available.

The collection and transmission of the data to the 112 call centre are solely to use the eCall system within the specified emergencies and in the context of the applicable legal provisions. The eCall system is not traceable and there is no permanent tracking of the vehicle.

The following data is transmitted:

- Vehicle's current position
- Vehicle type
- The emergency call triggered time
- Activation type of eCall manually or automatically
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Vehicle propulsion storage type

The following are the requirements to initiate the eCall:

- The vehicle is:
  - Turned On or awake for making manual eCall.
  - Turned On for making automatic eCall.
- eCall is operational
- Mobile network is available

#### INFORMATION

**The emergency call (eCall) function must only be used in case of an emergency or dangerous situation.**

### 11.1.2 Automatic eCall

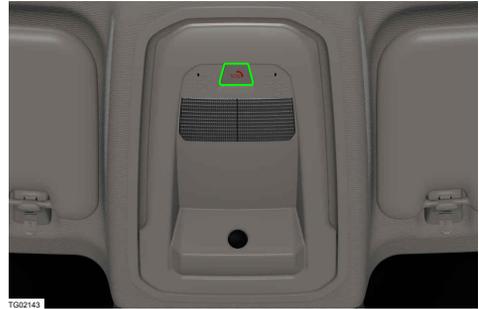
When airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, an eCall is triggered immediately. The automatic eCall cannot be cancelled using the SOS button.

If no response is received from the vehicle by the 112 call centre, rescue measures can be initiated.

#### INFORMATION

**The automatic emergency call (eCall) will not be triggered if the vehicle is turned Off.**

### 11.1.3 Manual eCall



Press the SOS button for at least 2 seconds.

- If the situation allows, wait in the vehicle until voice contact has been established with the 112 call centre.
- A message on the control display will appear when the connection is established with the 112 call centre.
- If the SOS button is pressed again within 10 seconds after the first button press time, the eCall will be cancelled. A message on the control display will appear to show the cancellation request of the eCall.
- If the eCall connection is established, and due to loudspeaker fault, you are unable to hear the 112 call centre voice. The vehicle occupant's voice can still be heard by the 112 call centre.

### 11.1.4 eCall Malfunction

Icon	Description
	eCall (Emergency Call) malfunction (Icon is steady)

The malfunction in the eCall system will be indicated on the driver's screen with a message. The emergency call function may not work.

It is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service and have the system checked immediately.

### 11.1.5 Contacting Togg

Togg Care and Roadside Assistance:  
+49-711-7815-8644

Togg Care e-mail : [toggcare@togg.eu](mailto:toggcare@togg.eu)

### 11.1.6 TPS eCall

TPS eCall (Third-Party Service eCall) is an emergency call system in your vehicle that connects to a third-party service provider. This service is designed to help you get assistance quickly in an emergency.

TPS eCall initiates

- Automatically: If your vehicle's sensors detect a serious accident (e.g., airbag deployment), the system can automatically place an eCall.
- Manually: You can also manually initiate an eCall by pressing the designated button in the vehicle.

When a TPS eCall is made, it uses mobile wireless networks to transmit the Minimum Set of Data (MSD) and establish an audio channel between the vehicle and the third-party service provider. Minimum set of data (MSD) contains information about the vehicle.

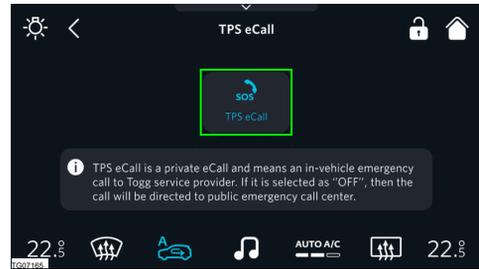
A Third-Party Service Provider acts as the initial point of contact for your TPS eCall. They are recognized by national authorities to receive the call and forward minimum set of data (MSD) to the eCall PSAP (Public safety answering point).

This feature allows to choose the preferred eCall service between Pan-European eCall (Public eCall) and TPS eCall (Private eCall).

The eCall can be selected using a control display,

Go to:

**Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Settings → TPS eCall**



- Tap on button to turn On/Off the TPS eCall feature.

#### INFORMATION

**The operational status of the TPS eCall feature is indicated by its button's illumination, blue signifies an active state and white denotes an inactive state.**

If your vehicle is equipped with TPS eCall, it will be visible through the control screen. Once it is visible, the customer can select Public eCall or Private eCall.

When the vehicle is first used, the TPS eCall (Private eCall) service will be active by default.

The TPS eCall feature can be manually toggled ON or OFF using the control screen. However, the system is designed to default TPS eCall to ON, ensuring it remains active in every condition such as profile changes or vehicle sleep cycles.

#### INFORMATION

**If the vehicle TPS feature is "ON" as "Private", but the connection is failed during the TPS eCall communication. In this case, there will be a fallback mechanism, so that 112 eCall will be automatically activated.**

## 11.2 Emergency Equipment

### 11.2.1 Safety Instructions

#### WARNING

**In the event of a sudden driving or braking maneuver or accident, loose objects could be flung through the vehicle and cause severe injuries.**

- Always secure the first aid kit and warning triangle safely in the designated holders in the vehicle.

## 11.2.2 Overview



TG007175

## 11.2.3 Warning Triangle

Warning triangle is located in the trunk.

## 11.2.4 First Aid Kit

The first aid kit is located in the trunk.

Some items in the first aid kit have a limited life. Check the use-by dates of the contents regularly and replace any items that have expired in good time. After use, renew contents if necessary and stow the first aid kit safely again.

## 11.3 Towing

### 11.3.1 Overview

Togg recommends transporting your vehicle in the case of a breakdown, rather than towing it away.

If you notice that the vehicle has lost coolant, do not have it towed away. Have the vehicle transported instead.

To ensure proper towing and to prevent accidental damage to your vehicle, take help of Togg Care.



TG002147

### 11.3.2 Safety Instructions

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- **If the vehicle is towed with one axle raised, the vehicle can be damaged. Only have the vehicle transported on a truck bed.**

- **Do not raise or secure the vehicle by its towing hook, body parts or chassis parts.**

#### **⚠ ATTENTION**

**The vehicle can be damaged, e.g. the vehicle paintwork, while removing and fitting the cover and towing hook.**

- **Remove and install the cover and the towing hook carefully so as to avoid damage to the vehicle.**

### 11.3.3 Towing Hook

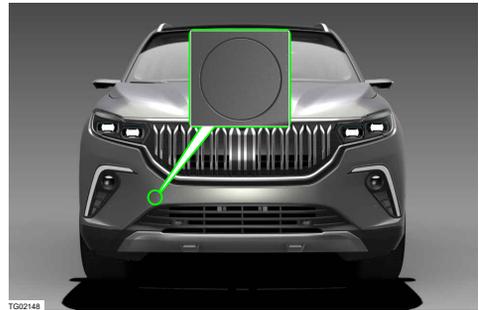
Always keep the towing hook in the vehicle. The towing hook can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

The towing hook is located in the trunk storage.

#### **⚠ ATTENTION**

**Avoid transverse loads on the towing hook, for example, do not raise the vehicle by the towing eye.**

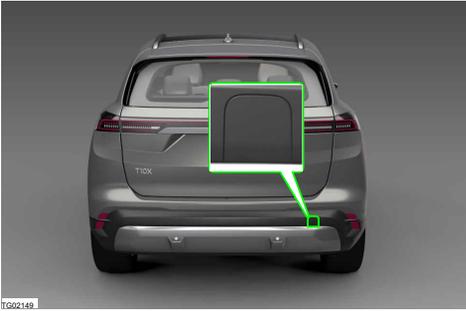
#### **Fitting towing hook at front**



TG002148

1. Remove towing hook from trunk storage.
2. Remove the tow hook cover provided on the front bumper by pressing/pulling it.
3. Turn the towing hook counterclockwise into the threaded hole and tighten as far as possible.

## Fitting towing hook at rear



TG02149

1. Remove the towing hook from trunk storage.
2. Remove the tow hook cover provided on the rear bumper by pressing/pulling it.
3. Turn the towing hook counterclockwise into the threaded hole and tighten as far as possible.

### 11.3.4 Towing Other Vehicle

You should only tow other vehicle if you have the necessary tools and technical expertise. Both drivers should be familiar with the special considerations when towing, especially when using a towing cable.

Switch On the hazard warning lights in line with local regulations.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- ***If the electrical system of the vehicle being towed has failed, the vehicle must be made identifiable to other road users.***
- ***Towing highly increases the risk of an accident, for example, from colliding with the vehicle being towed.***

#### **⚠ ATTENTION**

***Always ensure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is greater than the weight of the vehicle being towed.***

#### **Towing with rope**

- Only start to drive when the towing cable is taut.
- Apply the brakes very carefully.
- Avoid sudden braking or driving maneuvers.

#### **Towing with tow bar**

- The towing eyes of both vehicles should be on the same side.

## 11.4 Hazard Warning

### 11.4.1 Overview

The hazard warning indicators help to make other drivers aware of your vehicle in a dangerous situation.



TG01433

### 11.4.2 Switching Hazard Warning On and Off

- Press the hazard switch to turn On.
- Press the hazard switch again to turn Off.

When the hazard warning lights is turned On, all direction indicator lights will flash at the same time. Hazard warning switch remains functional even while the vehicle is turned On/Off.

#### **Switch On the hazard warning in the following situations:**

- There is an emergency situation.
- The vehicle has broken down.
- When tow-starting or towing.

Always follow current traffic laws for the use of the hazard warning lights.

If the hazard warning lights are not working, you must use an alternative method of drawing attention to the broken-down vehicle. This method must comply with current traffic laws.

#### **INFORMATION**

***Hazard warning may turn On in the event of emergency braking.***

## 11.5 Tire Repair Kit Usage

### 11.5.1 Safety Instructions

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- ***Punctures located within the tire treads can be sealed with the tire repair kit. Do not use the tire repair kit if there are several damages to the tire or***

*the puncture is over 6 mm in diameter. It is recommended to contact a Togg authorized roadside assistance service for help.*

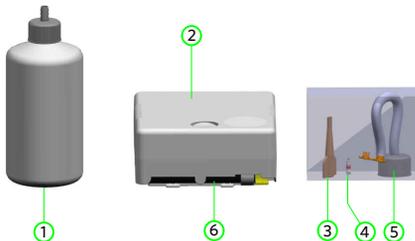
- **Do not drive the vehicle at high speeds when a temporarily repaired tire is installed. There is a risk of an accident by losing vehicle control if the tire bursts or loses pressure.**
- **Avoid high speed cornering and hard accelerations. The maximum permitted speed for a temporarily repaired tire is 110 km/h.**
- **Do not drive the vehicle with a temporarily repaired tire for more than 100 km. The tire repair kit is only an emergency solution to enable you to drive to the nearest Togg authorized service.**
- **Avoid contact with tire filling sealant. It is harmful to health and highly flammable. Never allow children to handle tire sealant bottle.**
- **If the tire sealant comes into contact eyes or skin, thoroughly rinse the affected part with clean water and seek medical help immediately.**
- **Do not use the sealant container after the expiry date shown on the container label.**
- **There is a risk of injury. Never stand near the tire being inflated with a compressor. If you observe any cracks or bulges on the tire, switch Off the compressor immediately. Do not continue to drive and it is recommended to contact a Togg authorized roadside assistance service for help.**

### **⚠ ATTENTION**

**There is a risk of damage to the compressor due to overheating if operated for too long. Do not run the compressor for more than 20 minutes.**

In the event of a flat tire, the tire repair kit can be used to seal minor tire damages and allow you to continue the journey.

The tire repair kit is located in the trunk storage area. (Refer to [9.5.4 Trunk Storage Box](#) )



TG02524

1. Sealant container
2. Compressor
3. Valve core tool
4. Inner valve
5. Clear tube
6. Inflation tube

### 11.5.2 Filling Tire Sealant

1. Shake the sealant container (1).
2. Remove the valve cap from the punctured tire valve.
3. Remove the inner valve using the valve core tool (3).

### INFORMATION

**If a replacement inner valve is not available, stow the inner valve in a clean and dry place.**

4. Install the clear tube (2) to the punctured tire valve and screw the sealant container (1) onto clear tube.
5. Squeeze the sealant container (1) forcefully until it is completely empty into the tire. Ensure to hold the sealant container (1) at a higher level than the tire valve level.
6. Remove the clear tube (5) from the tire valve.
7. Screw the inner valve (4) with the help of valve core tool (3) into the tire valve. Ensure that the inner valve is firmly installed.

### 11.5.3 Inflating the Tire

### INFORMATION

**When inflating the front tire using the compressor, route the compressor cable from inside the vehicle to connect the compressor plug to 12V power outlet.**

1. Remove the compressor (2) from the trunk storage box and carefully read the instruction mentioned on the compressor.
2. **⚠ ATTENTION** **Make sure that the compressor is set to Off before connecting to the vehicle's 12V power outlet.**

Connect the inflation tube (6) to the tire valve and connect the compressor plug into the vehicle's 12V power outlet in trunk storage. (Refer to [9.5.7 12V Power Outlet](#) )

3. Switch On the compressor (2) and inflate the tire with recommended tire pressure mentioned on the B- pillar. (Refer to [10.4.1 Tire Inflation Information](#) )

#### INFORMATION

***If after 15 minutes from the compressor being switched On, the pressure gauge still shows a pressure of less than 19 psi, switch Off the compressor and disconnect the inflation tube from the tire valve. Tighten the valve cap on the valve and move the vehicle so that the tire makes about 5 turns to distribute the sealant inside it. Stop the vehicle, reconnect the inflation tube to the tire valve and run the compressor until the recommended pressure has been reached.***

#### WARNING

***If the tire pressure cannot be reached after 15 more minutes of the compressor use, the tire may have severe damage. Do not continue the journey with this tire. It is recommended to contact a Togg authorized roadside assistance service for help.***

4. Switch Off the compressor (2), remove the compressor plug from vehicle's 12V power outlet and disconnect the inflation tube (6) from the tire valve.
5. Install the valve cap on the tire valve.
6. Stow the compressor (2) and tire repair kit into the trunk storage box.
7. Drive the vehicle for at least 10 minutes at a maximum speed of 110 km/h to evenly distribute the tire sealant inside the tire.

#### WARNING

- ***Tire sealant may spray from the damaged area during the initial wheel rotation. Before driving away, make sure that no one is near the vehicle who could be sprayed with sealing compound.***
  - ***If you experience any abnormal noise or vibrations while driving, stop the vehicle safely when traffic condition allows to. Do not continue to drive and it is recommended to contact a Togg authorized roadside assistance service for help.***
8. Stop the vehicle and park in safe place.
  9. Remove the compressor (2) from the trunk storage box.

10. **ATTENTION** ***Make sure that the compressor is set to Off before connecting to the vehicle's 12V power outlet.***

Connect the inflation tube (6) to the tire valve and connect the compressor plug into the vehicle's 12V power outlet in trunk storage.

11. Check the pressure gauge for the correct tire pressure reading.
12. If the tire pressure is under 19 psi, the tire is not sufficiently sealed. Do not continue to drive and it is recommended to contact a Togg authorized roadside assistance service for help.
13. If the tire pressure is 19 psi or above, start compressor and inflate the tire to recommended pressure. (Refer to [10.4.1 Tire Inflation Information](#) )

## 12 Car Care

### 12.1 Washing the Vehicle

#### 12.1.1 Overview

The best protection for the vehicle against the damaging effects of the environment is frequent washing and preservation. The longer the road salt, road dust, industrial dust, insect remains, bird excrement and tree exudations (e.g., resin, pollen) are allowed to remain on the vehicle, the more harmful their effect is. To help prevent corrosion, it is particularly important to wash the car frequently in the wintertime.

#### 12.1.2 Steps for Exterior Cleaning

##### 1. Rinse thoroughly

Before washing, flush grime and grit from the vehicle with clean water. Flush away accumulations of mud in areas where debris easily collects (such as wheel wells and panel seams). If salt has been used on the highways (such as during winter months), thoroughly rinse all traces of road salt from the underside of the vehicle, wheel wells, and brakes.

##### 2. Hand wash

Hand wash using a clean, soft cloth and cold or lukewarm water containing a mild, high-quality car shampoo.

#### **⚠ ATTENTION**

*Some cleaners and car shampoos contain chemicals that can cause damage or discoloration, especially to plastic trim pieces, lamps, or camera lenses. For example, some car cleaning formulas contain hydroxide or other highly alkaline or caustic ingredients that can damage exterior components.*

##### 3. Rinse with clean water

After washing, rinse with clean water to prevent soap from drying on the surfaces.

##### 4. Dry thoroughly and clean exterior glass

After washing and rinsing, dry thoroughly with a chamois cloth. Clean windows and mirrors using a glass cleaner. Do not scrape or use any abrasive cleaning fluid on glass or mirrored surfaces.

#### **INFORMATION**

*Condensation may form temporarily on the inside of the lenses of exterior lights, such as headlights or taillights. This is normal and the lights are designed to withstand moisture. Normally, condensation will dissipate after the lights have been used for a short time.*

#### **⚠ WARNING**

*Never spray liquid at a high velocity (for example, if using a pressure washer) towards the charge port while vehicle is charging. Failure to follow these instructions can result in serious injury or damage to the vehicle, charging equipment, or property.*

#### **⚠ ATTENTION**

- *Avoid washing your car in direct sunlight. Doing so may cause detergents and wax to dry out and become abrasive. To avoid scratching, use lukewarm water to soften the dirt before you wash with a soft sponge, and plenty of sudsy water.*
- *Do not use any chemicals other than approved washer fluid to clean the windshield. Doing so can interfere with wiper friction and cause a chattering sound.*
- *Do not use hot water, detergents, or highly alkaline or caustic cleaning products, especially those containing hydroxide.*
- *If using a pressure washer, maintain a distance of at least 30 cm (12") between the nozzle and the surface of vehicle. Avoid aiming the water jet directly on the camera(s) or parking sensors (if equipped). Do not clean a sensor or camera lens with a sharp or abrasive object that can scratch or damage its surface. Keep the nozzle moving and do not concentrate the water jet on any one area.*
- *Do not aim water jet directly at windows, door, or hood seals or at electronic modules or exposed cabling.*
- *To avoid corrosive damage that may not be covered by the warranty, rinse away any road salt from the underside of the vehicle, wheel wells, and brakes. After cleaning the vehicle, dry the brakes by going on a short drive and applying the brakes multiple times.*
- *Avoid using tight-napped or rough cloths, such as washing mitts. A high-quality microfiber cleaning cloth is recommended.*
- *Ensure the wipers are Off before washing vehicle to avoid the risk of damaging the wipers.*

- **Do not use chemical-based wheel cleaners or pre-wash products. These can damage the finish on the wheels.**
- **If equipped with keyless entry, rearview mirrors may fold in and out automatically if the remote key is within the operating range.**

#### INFORMATION

**When washing the car, remember to remove dirt from the drain holes in the doors and sills.**

#### ATTENTION

**Remove the bird droppings from painted surfaces as soon as possible. Otherwise, the finish may be permanently damaged.**

### 12.1.3 Cleaning Sensors & Camera Lenses

Clean sensors or camera lenses using a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass cleaner.

## 12.2 Vinyl and Upholstery Care

### 12.2.1 Cleaning Vinyl Seats (if equipped)

Remove dust from the vinyl at regular intervals with a cloth moistened with water and non-detergent soap or vacuum cleaner. Dust and road dirt will otherwise become worked into pores and folds, resulting in considerable abrasion and causing the vinyl surface to become prematurely brittle. Clean light-colored vinyl more frequently as it has the tendency to soil faster. Use vinyl cleaner, otherwise dirt and grease will attack the protective coating of the vinyl. After cleaning, allow the seats to air dry.

### 12.2.2 Cleaning Fabric Seats (If equipped)

Remove dust from the fabric seats at regular intervals with a vacuum cleaner. If the fabric surfaces are heavily soiled with beverage stains, use a suitable interior cleaner or wet vacuum cleaner.

#### ATTENTION

- **If equipped with heated seats, turn Off the seat heating feature to avoid component damage while cleaning seats. Do not use the seat heating feature to dry the seats.**
- **Remove aggressive substances immediately to prevent the vinyl from being altered or discolored.**
- **To avoid seat cover damage while cleaning,**
  - **Use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth to wipe the seat covers down to the seams with a large wiping motion and moderate pressure.**

- **Do not use leather care products, solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on fabrics or vinyl surface.**
- **Do not use brushes, hard sponges, steam cleaners, or similar aids to clean the seat.**

- **Clothing with Velcro closures or sharp objects such as zip fasteners, rivets, or belts may damage the seat cover surface by snagging or scratching. Do not rub such objects against the seat.**
- **Read the manufacturer's recommendations before using seat covers. Some seat covers contain chemicals that may stain or discolor the seat material.**
- **Avoid prolonged vinyl exposure to direct sunlight as it may get discoloured. If the vehicle is parked in the direct sunlight for a long time, it is recommended to cover the vinyl.**

#### INFORMATION

- **Use of unsuitable cleaning products and inappropriate cleaning processes can damage the vinyl.**
- **Prevent water accumulation on vinyl, immediately wipe with dry cloth.**

### 12.2.3 Cleaning Seat Belts

Dirt on the seat belt straps can interfere with the action of the reel and is a safety hazard.

To ensure proper cleaning:

- Use mild detergent for soiled seat belts.
- Avoid direct sunlight when drying.
- Only use suitable cleaning products.
- Do not dye or bleach seat belts. The belt fabric could be weakened, thus affecting safety.
- Do not allow seat belts to retract until they are dry.

#### WARNING

**Chemical cleaners can cause irreparable damage to the fabric of the seat belts. The protective function of the seat belts will be lost. There is a risk of injury or even death. Only use a mild soap and water solution for cleaning the seat belts.**

### 12.2.4 Cleaning Floor Mats and Carpet

Floor mats can be removed from the vehicle to enable the interior to be cleaned more thoroughly. In the event of heavy soiling, clean the floor carpets using microfiber cloth and water.

The floor carpet should be vacuum cleaned regularly. Spots on the floor mats can be removed with mild detergent.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Never use more than one floor mat at a time on the driver's floor. Any mat used in this position should be properly secured. An extra mat or unsecured mat on the driver's floor can cause the accelerator and/or brake pedal to catch. Check that the movement of these pedals are not impeded.**

### 12.2.5 Cleaning Fabric

Fabric linings on headliner, pillars, and trims must be cleaned with suitable cleaning agents or foam. In case of major contaminations, such as beverage stains, use a moist soft sponge or microfiber cloth with suitable cleaning agents.

#### **⚠ ATTENTION**

**Remove aggressive substances immediately to prevent the fabric from being altered or discolored.**

### 12.2.6 Cleaning Display and Screens

#### **INFORMATION**

**Always turn Off the display before cleaning.**

Contaminated display may affect the usability and readability of display. Regularly clean the display for better experience.

Wipe the screen with a clean antistatic microfiber cloth and suitable display care products. Make sure the cloth is free of abrasive material, which can create scratches on the display.

#### **⚠ ATTENTION**

- **Chemical cleaners, moisture or fluids of all kinds can damage the surface of displays and screens.**
- **Applying excessive pressure and use of abrasive material can damage the display surface.**
- **Do not spray cleaners directly onto the display, instead spray them on the antistatic microfiber cloth used for cleaning the display.**

### 12.2.7 Cleaning Plastic

Clean with a damp microfiber cloth.

#### **⚠ ATTENTION**

- **Do not attach stickers, films or similar materials on plastic trims.**

- **Do not allow cosmetics, insect repellent, car freshener or sun cream to come in contact with the plastic trim as it can damage the component.**

### 12.2.8 Cleaning High Gloss Plastic

Please follow the below explanation to achieve clean and high gloss results.

Interior high gloss trims must be cleaned with suitable cleaning agents such as polish and finish. In case of major contaminations, such as loss of gloss, scratches, or fingerprint stains, use an antistatic microfiber cloth or a moist soft sponge with suitable cleaning agents. Make sure that the cloth is free of abrasive material, which can create scratches on the trims.

#### **⚠ ATTENTION**

**Do not use alcohol based cleaner products. It can damage the component.**

### 12.2.9 Cleaning Microfiber Seat (if equipped)

#### **Ordinary maintenance**

To maintain over time the beauty of microfiber, it is recommended to clean it regularly, avoiding rubbing too vigorously and avoiding the use of high-temperature steam appliances.

#### **Daily cleaning**

It is sufficient to remove dust from microfiber using either a soft brush or a dry cloth, or vacuum cleaner.

#### **Weekly cleaning**

After removing dust from microfiber, wipe it with a slightly damp white cotton cloth. Please avoid the use of printed absorbent clothes/papers as they could release ink onto the material.

#### **Annual cleaning**

Dust thoroughly the material; moisten a soft cloth or a sponge in clean water, wring it well and roll it over the microfiber material making sure not to wet it too deeply; roll once again with a damp cloth in clean water and leave to dry thoroughly. Once dried, to restore the material, brush it delicately with a soft bristle brush.

#### **General instructions for stain removal**

Use a white cloth or a well wringed sponge to remove stains and do not pour the product used for the cleaning directly onto microfiber. It is important to make a circular movement from the outside towards the inside to avoid the stain expansion.

## 12.3 Vehicle Storage

### 12.3.1 General

If you plan on storing your vehicle for two weeks or more, read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in a good operating condition.

Vehicle components are engineered for regular and reliable driving. Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve vehicle components.

- Store vehicle in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

### 12.3.2 Body

- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

### 12.3.3 High-voltage and Low-voltage Battery Systems

- When storing your vehicle for more than two weeks, do not park the vehicle with a discharged high-voltage battery. The state of charge should be approximately 30%.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

***Only Togg service personnel is allowed to disconnect the 12V low-voltage battery. There is a risk of injury, never disconnect the 12V low-voltage battery yourself.***

### 12.3.4 Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure. (Refer to [10.4.1 Tire Inflation Information](#) )
- The shape of the tire may change if the vehicle parked in direct sunlight for a period of time. Move vehicle forward or rearward regularly to avoid patch formation.

### 12.3.5 Removing Your Vehicle from Storage

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.

- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.

- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation as per the tire pressure label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Drive your vehicle back and forth to remove rust build-up.

It is recommended to contact a Togg authorized service if you have any concerns or issues.

## 13 Technical Data

### 13.1 Vehicle Identification

#### 13.1.1 Vehicle Identification Number

The vehicle identification number legally identifies your vehicle and it can be read from outside the vehicle through a viewer in the windscreen. The viewer is located in the left lower corner of the windscreen.



#### 13.1.2 Statutory Plate

The statutory plate is visible at the driver side B pillar after opening the driver's door.

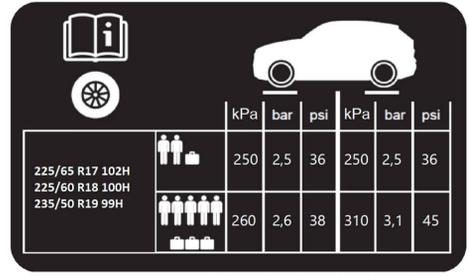


TG01421

1. Emission Control Information Number
2. Vehicle Identification Number
3. Gross Vehicle Weight Rating
4. Gross Front Axle Weight Rating
5. Gross Rear Axle Weight Rating

#### 13.1.3 Tire Pressure Plate

The tire pressure plate is visible at the B pillar after opening the driver's side door.



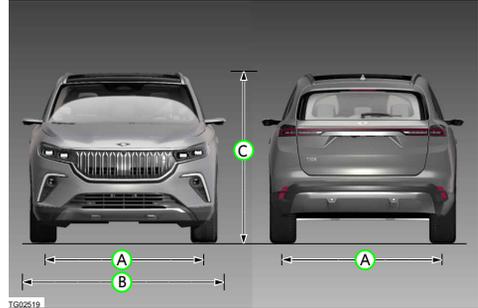
TG01423

### 13.2 Vehicle Specifications

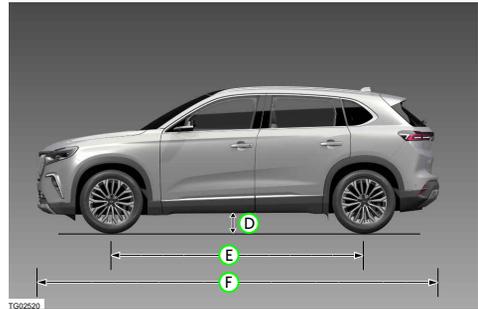
#### 13.2.1 Vehicle Dimensions

Dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The vehicle height may also deviate, e.g. as a result of tires and load.



TG00519



TG00520

Dimensions		
Track width (A)	Front	1600 mm
	Rear	1620 mm

<b>Dimensions</b>	
Width with mirrors folded out (B)	2100 mm
Width with mirrors folded in	1911 mm
Height (C)	1674 mm
Ground clearance (D)	140 mm
Wheelbase (E)	2890 mm
Length (F)	4599 mm
Turning diameter curb to curb	11.6 m
Turning diameter wall to wall	12.1 m

### 13.2.2 Weights and Loads

Vehicle specific load information can be found on statutory plate on driver's side B pillar.

Vehicle weight information can vary depending on optional equipment installed in the vehicle.

#### **ATTENTION**

**When loading the vehicle, the maximum gross vehicle weight and permissible axle weights may not be exceeded.**

<b>RWD</b>		
Vehicle kerb weight ready for use, with 75 kg load, no optional equipment	Standard Range	2081 Kg
	Long Range	2240 Kg
Gross Vehicle Weight	Standard Range	2449 Kg
	Long Range	2608 Kg
Permissible front axle capacity	Standard Range	1173 Kg
	Long Range	1394 Kg

Permissible rear axle capacity	Standard Range	1377 Kg
	Long Range	1506 Kg
Max roof load		75 Kg
Permissible luggage compartment load		100 Kg

<b>AWD</b>	
Vehicle kerb weight ready for use, with 75 kg load, no optional equipment	2351 Kg
Gross Vehicle Weight	2727 Kg
Permissible front axle capacity	1394 Kg
Permissible rear axle capacity	1506 Kg
Max roof load	75 Kg
Permissible luggage compartment load	100 Kg

## 13.3 Operating Fluids

### 13.3.1 Overview

Operating fluids include:

- Brake fluid
- Coolant
- Refrigerant
- Washer fluid

Only use Togg approved products. Damages caused due to the use of unapproved products will not be covered under warranty.

### 13.3.2 Safety Instructions

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- **There is a risk of fire and injury. Keep antifreeze away from source of combustion. Comply to instructions on containers.**
- **Some antifreezes can contain toxic substances and are flammable. Keep operating fluids out of the reach of children.**
- **In order to ensure safe and risk-free operation, always have the air conditioning system serviced by trained specialists.**
- **Unqualified work in the vicinity of high-voltage system can lead to malfunctions, accidents and injuries. It is recommended you first choose Togg authorized service for any assistance.**
- **Always keep children away from the front compartment and never leave them unsupervised.**

#### **⚠ ATTENTION**

- **There is a risk of material damage. Do not add silicone additives to the washer fluid. Such additives may cause damage to the vehicle.**
- **Do not mix different screen wash concentrates or antifreezes. Please comply with the instructions and mixing ratios stated on the containers.**
- **While filling fluids, be sure not add any fluid to wrong reservoirs. Otherwise, severe malfunctions and damage will occur.**
- **Incorrect disposal of operating fluids can cause environmental pollution. Please dispose operating fluids in accordance with local regulations.**

### 13.3.3 Brake Fluid

Brake fluid will gradually absorb moisture from the surrounding air over the course of time. This lowers the boiling point of the brake fluid. If the boiling point is too low, vapour pockets may form in the brake system when the brakes are applied hard. Vapour pockets reduce the braking efficiency, considerably increase braking distance and can even cause the brake system to fail completely.

Brake fluid should be changed at regular intervals. It is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service to have the brake fluid changed. The authorized Togg service will inform you of the replacement intervals.

#### **Brake fluid level low warning**

The brake fluid level low warning will be shown on driver's screen when brake fluid level is low.

If the brake fluid level low warning lights up, then:

- Do not continue driving. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- It is recommended to inform a Togg authorized service and have the brake system checked.

#### **⚠ ATTENTION**

**Brake fluid that has leaked or been spilled can damage the vehicle paintwork, plastic parts and tires. Wipe off brake fluid that has leaked or been spilled immediately from all parts of the vehicle.**

Icon	Description
	Brake fluid level low (Icon is steady)

#### **Checking brake fluid level**

It is recommended to get brake fluid level checked by a Togg authorized service.

The brake fluid level drops slightly during vehicle operation as the brake pads wear and the brakes are automatically adjusted.

**Recommended brake fluid grade:** DOT 5.1

**Filling Quantity:** 0.9 Kg

### 13.3.4 Coolant

Do not work on the cooling system unless you are familiar with the task, aware of the general safety procedures and have the correct equipment, operating fluids and suitable tools. It is recommended to that the work should only be carried out by a Togg authorized service as they have the necessary tools and trained workshop personnel.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**There is a risk of injury due to pressurized and hot coolant inside the expansion tank. Never open the cap on a coolant expansion tank yourself. It is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service for any assistance.**

Icon	Description
	Thermal system error (Icon is steady)
	Thermal system coolant level low (Icon is steady)

If coolant temperature high light flashes on the driver's screen:

- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.
- Turn Off the vehicle drive system.
- It is recommended to inform a Togg authorized service and seek assistance.

### ⚠ ATTENTION

**A drop in coolant level indicates a vehicle defect, such as leaks in the coolant system. It is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service to check the coolant system. Never add coolant yourself.**

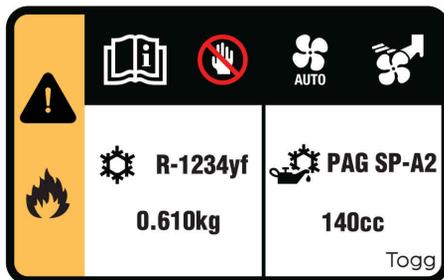
**Recommended coolant grade:** 45% Glycol and 55% Water

**Filling Quantity:** AWD - 15.74 Litres, RWD- 14.36 Litres

### 13.3.5 Refrigerant in Air Conditioning System

The air conditioning system in the vehicle uses a R1234yf refrigerant. The label on the inside of hood contains more information regarding the type and quantity of refrigerant used in the vehicle's air conditioning system.

Depending on the production date of your vehicle, your vehicle will have one of the following labels.



TG01424



TG07176

### Warning label explanation

Symbol	Explanation
	Warning
	Flammable refrigerant
	Hot components
	Type of lubricating oil
	Type of refrigerant
	Radiator fan can switch On at any time
	Always follow instructions in the owner's manual

### 13.3.6 Washer Fluid

A warning symbol will be displayed on the driver's screen when the washer fluid level is low. Check and refilled as necessary. All spray nozzles are supplied from one tank. We recommend to use the products recommended by Togg for the windshield washer system.

Recommended mixing ratio of antifreeze and water should be 30:70 (30% antifreeze and 70% water).

Icon	Description
	Washer fluid level low (Icon is steady)

### ⚠ WARNING

**Never mix coolant additives or other unsuitable additives into the windscreen washer fluid. These may leave an oily film on the window, considerably restricting the field of vision.**

**Filling quantity:** 5 Litres

**Anti-freezing temperature:** -20°C

# Index

## A

- A/C MAX 155
- AUTO Mode 155
- Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System 86
- Active Emergency Stop 85
- Adaptive Cruise Control 76
  - Activating adaptive cruise control 77
  - Cancelling adaptive cruise control 78
  - Headway setting 80
  - Overriding 79
  - Overtake support 79
  - Resuming set speed 78
  - Stop-and-Go function 79
- Adaptive Driver Assist 74
  - Limitations 76
  - Using adaptive driver assist 75
- Advanced Driver Assistance System 63
- Air Quality Control 158
- Airbags 23
  - Airbag locations 24
  - Airbag malfunction 26
  - Deactivating passenger airbag 25
- Ambient Lighting 134
  - Ambient light settings 134
- Anti Theft Alarm 36
  - False alarms 37
  - Indications 37
  - Switching Off triggered alarm 37
- Anti-Lock Braking System 45
- Armrest 163
- Auto Parking 51
  - Cancelling the auto parking 54
  - Ending the auto park in 53
  - Ending the auto park out 54
  - Limitations 54
  - Malfunction 54
  - Park in 52
  - Park out 53
- Automatic Brake Prefill 44

## B

- Blind Spot Warning 73

- Blower 154
- Bluetooth 113
  - Connecting the device 113
  - Disconnecting the device 113
- Brake Blending 44
- Brake Fluid 192
- Brake Maintenance 45
- Braking 44

## C

- Camera Mirror System 143
  - Camera mirror system settings 144
  - Operational modes 144
  - Outside camera heating 146
  - Safety instruction 143
  - Using the camera mirror system 144
- Cameras and Sensors 14
  - Front 14
  - Rear 14
- Car Care 186
  - Display and screens 188
  - Exterior cleaning 186
  - Fabric 188
  - Fabric seats 188
  - Floor mats and carpet 187
  - High gloss plastic 188
  - Interior cleaning 187
  - Plastic 188
  - Seat belt 187
  - Sensors & camera lenses 187
  - Vinyl seats 187
  - Washing the Vehicle 186
- Changing the Tire and Wheel 177
  - Tire replacement 177
  - Tire rotation 177
- Charging Equipment 88
  - Charging cable 89
- Charging Operation 89
  - Charge settings 91
  - Charging status display 90
  - Ending charging 91
  - Starting charging 89
  - Troubleshooting 92
- Charging Types 89
  - DC fast charging 89

- Mode 2 89
- Mode 3 89
- Child Safety 18
  - Child presence detection 21
  - Child presence detection warnings 21
  - Child proof locks 22
  - Child restraint system (CRS) 19
  - Child restraint system attachment points 20
  - Child restraint system installation positions 19
  - Deactivating child presence detection 22
- Climate Control 152
  - Air distribution 153
  - Air flow 152
  - Air vents 156
  - Blower control 154
  - Climate control features 155
  - Functions & settings 153
  - Main screen overlay 107
  - Temperature control 154
- Climate Control Operating Tips 156
- Coat Hook 161
- Control Screen 102
  - Main controls 103
  - Using control display 103
- Coolant 192
- Corner Radar Features 71
  - Activating/Deactivating corner radar features 74
  - Limitations 74
- Cornering Lights 132
- Courtesy Light 134
- Creep Mode 41
- Cruise Control 42
  - Activating cruise control 43
  - Cancelling cruise control 44
  - Changing speed 43
  - Resuming set speed 44
  - Using cruise control 43
- Cup Holders 164
- Curtain Roller Blind 165

## D

- Dashboard Overview 94
- Daytime Running Light 130
- Defrost 156
  - Max defrost 157
- Departure Plan 159
  - Using departure plan 160
- Digital Assistant 102
- Doors 29
  - Central locking 31
  - Keyless entry 30
  - Locking/unlocking from outside 29
  - Locking/unlocking with mechanical key 32
  - Speed sensing door locks 32
- Drive Mode 60
  - Comfort 60
  - Drive mode controls 60
  - Eco 60
  - Sport 60
- Drive Positions 41
- Driver Attention Assist 63
  - Driver attention assist settings 65
  - Driver monitoring system 64
  - Limitations 65
  - Unsteady driver warning 64
- Driver's Screen 94
  - Center tile 95
  - Functions tile 96
  - Information tile 94
  - Operating drivers screen 101

## E

- Electric Drive 40
- Electric Parking Brake 47
- Electric Tailgate 36
- Electronic Stability Control 46
  - Hill descent control 46
  - Hill start assist 46
- Emergency Equipments 180
- Energy Recuperation 62
  - Adjusting recuperation level 63
  - Levels of recuperation 63
- Engine Performance Limited 42
- Entering the Text 105

- Evasive Steering Support (ESS) 69
- Exterior Lighting 128
  - Brake light 133
  - Daytime running light 130
  - Direction indicator 130
  - Fog light 131
  - High beam 130
  - Light scenario 129
  - Parking light 133
  - Position light 128
- eCall (Emergency call) 180
  - Automatic eCall 180
  - eCall Malfunction 180
  - Manual eCall 180

## F

- Fog Light 131
  - Front fog light 132
  - Rear fog light 132
- Forward Collision Avoidance 68
  - Advanced emergency braking 69
  - Distance alert 69
  - Forward collision avoidance settings 71
  - Limitations 71
- Front Cross Traffic Alert 71
- Fuses and Relays 170
  - Cabin fuse box 171
  - Identifying the blown fuse 174
  - Trunk fuse box 173

## G

- Glove Box 161
  - Glove box light 134
  - Opening and Closing 162

## H

- HMI Settings 107
  - Display settings 107
  - General settings 108
  - Screen touch sensitivity 108
  - Time 107
  - Units and language 107
- Hazard Warning 183
- Headrest 137
  - Front headrest 137

- Installing 138
- Rear headrest 137
  - Removing 138
- High Beam Light Assist 130
- High-voltage Battery Safety 88
  - Disposing high-voltage battery 88
  - High-voltage battery care 88
- High-voltage Safety 16
  - Crash deactivation 16
- Hood Opening/Closing 34
- Horn Pad 14
- Hotspot 114
  - Changing the name and password 114
  - Connecting device 114

## I

- Indicators and Telltales 96
- Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control 76
  - Activating intelligent adaptive cruise control 79
  - Limitations 80
  - Using intelligent adaptive cruise control 77
- Intelligent Speed Limiter 81
- Interior Lighting 133
  - Footwell light settings 135
  - Reading light 133
  - Reading light settings 134

## L

- Lane Safety Assist 65
  - Emergency Lane Keeping 66
  - Lane Departure Warning 66
  - Lane safety assist settings 67
  - Limitations 67
  - Unavailability conditions 67
- Low-voltage Battery 170
  - Charging 170
  - Disposing low-voltage battery 170
  - Replacing low-voltage battery 170

## M

- Main Screen 104
  - Activating/Deactivating 105
  - Main screen interaction 106

- Permanent widget 104
- Quick information widget 104
- Temporary widget 104
- Widget layout types 105
- Maintenance Schedule 168
  - Maintenance table 168
  - Service interval assist 168
- Media Player 115
- Memory Function 150
  - Storing the position 150
- Mirrors 141
  - Adjusting outside mirror 141
  - Outside mirror heating 143
  - Parking position 143
  - Power folding outside mirror 142
  - Rear view mirror 147

## O

- Occupant Safe Exit 73
- One Pedal Drive with Hold 61
  - Activating/Deactivating 61
  - Limitations 62
- Outside Mirror 141
  - Adjusting 141
  - Heating 143
  - Parking position 143
  - Power folding 142
- Owner's Manual 119

## P

- Panorooft System 37
  - Malfunction correction 38
  - Opening/Closing 38
- Park Assist 49
  - Activating/Deactivating the park assist 50
  - Front/Rear park assist 49
  - Limitations 50
  - Malfunction 51
  - Side park assist 49
- Parking Light 133
- Parking and Maneuvering 48
  - Auto parking 51
  - Safety instructions 48
  - Surround view 54

- Phone 116
- Power Outlet - 12V 167
- Profiles & Customization 109
  - Activating the profile 110
  - Face recognition 111
  - Guest profile 112
  - Managing the profiles 110
  - Profiles 109
  - Valet mode 111
  - Vehicle factory defaults 112
  - Welcome and goodbye screen 109

## R

- Radio 118
- Rain Sensing Wiper 148
- Rear Collision Warning 74
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert 72
- Rear View Mirror 147
  - Auto dimming 147
  - Manual dimming 147
- Rear Window Heating 157
- Rearview Camera 59
  - Rearview camera cleaning 59
- Recirculation Control 158
  - Activating/Deactivating 158
- Recuperation 63
- Refrigerant 193
- Remote Key 27
  - Immobilizer 28
  - Mechanical key 27
  - Replacing battery 28
  - Vehicle start with discharged battery 28
- Replacing Wiper Blade 149
- Rotary Knob 106
  - Operating rotary knob 106

## S

- Seat Belts 16
  - Adjusting seat belts during pregnancy 17
  - Correct seat belt positioning 17
  - Fastening seat belt 17
  - Seat belt load limiter 18
  - Seat belt pretensioner 18

- Seat belt reminder 17
- Unfastening seat belt 17
- Seat Heating 139
  - Front row seat 140
  - Rear row seat 140
- Seats 135
  - Adjusting seat 136
  - Child restraint system attachment points 139
  - Correct seating position 136
  - Folding rear seat backrest 138
  - Headrest adjustment 137
  - Safety instructions 135
  - Seat heating 139
- Smart Access 28
  - Creating digital key 29
  - Limitations of digital key 29
- Software Updates 124
  - Failed software update 125
  - Performing software reset 125
  - Software update settings 124
- Sound Settings 107
- Speed Limiter 81
  - Changing speed limit 82
  - Intelligent speed limiter 81
  - Limitations 84
  - Resuming speed limit 83
  - Speed limiter settings 83
  - Using intelligent speed limiter 77
- Start/Stop Button 40
- Starting the Vehicle 40
- Steering Wheel 141
- Steering Wheel Switches 141
- Storage Locations 161
  - Armrest & cup holders 163
  - Center console storage 162
  - Front row storage 161
  - Glove box storage 161
  - Second row storage 161
  - Trunk storage 164
- Sun Visor 38
  - Adjusting sun visor 38
- Surround View 54
  - Activating/Deactivating 56
  - Camera views 57

- Limitations 59
- Parking guidelines 55
- Switching Off the Vehicle 42

## T

- Tailgate 35
- Technical Data
  - Dimensions 190
  - Operating fluids 191
  - Statutory plate 190
  - Tire pressure plate 190
  - Vehicle Identification Number 190
  - Weights and loads 191
- Temperature 154
- Tips for Increasing Economy 61
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System 86
  - Tire pressure display 87
  - TPMS auto-learning 87
- Tire Repair Kit 183
  - Filling tire sealant 184
  - Inflating the tire 184
- Togg Widgets 115
  - Cluster duplicate 122
  - Journey data 123
  - Screen saver 122
  - Tru.Store 123
- Towing 182
  - Towing hook 182
- Trumore App 127
- Trunk Storage 164
  - Anchor points 166
  - Loading 165
  - Rear seat backrest 166
  - Trunk curtain roller blind 165
  - Trunk light 134
  - Trunk storage box 165
- Trunk Storage Box 165

## U

- USB Ports 163

## V

- Vanity Mirror 39
- Vehicle Jacking 178
  - Jacking points 179

- Vehicle Modes 41
- Vehicle Storage 189
  - Battery systems 189
  - Body 189
  - Tires 189

## **W**

- Washer Fluid 193
  - Refilling washer fluid 148
- Wheels and Tires 175
  - Snow chains 176
  - Speed symbols 176
  - Storing tires 177
  - Tire age 176
  - Tire inflation information 175
  - Tire rotation 177
  - Tire specification 175
  - Tread 176
- Wi-Fi 113
  - Connect to other 114
  - Connecting to Wi-Fi 113
  - Managing the networks 114
- Windows 32
  - Anti trap function 33
  - Comfort open/close 33
  - Correcting malfunction 34
  - Operating windows 33
  - Safety instructions 32
- Windshield Heater 158
- Wiper Controls 147
  - Front wipers 147
  - Rear wiper 147
  - Rear wiper in reverse gear 148
- Wireless Charging 162

## Abbreviation

<b>ABS</b> - Anti-Lock Braking System	<b>QR Code</b> - Quick Response Code
<b>AC</b> - Alternating Current	<b>RADAR</b> - Radio Detection and Ranging
<b>ACC</b> - Adaptive Cruise Control	<b>RF</b> - Radio Frequency
<b>ADAS</b> - Advanced Driver Assistance System	<b>RHP</b> - Rush Hour Pilot
<b>AEB</b> - Advanced Emergency Braking	<b>RTTI</b> - Real Time Traffic Information
<b>AVAS</b> - Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System	<b>RWD</b> - Rear Wheel Drive
<b>AWD</b> - All Wheel Drive	<b>SoC</b> - State of Charge
<b>BEV</b> - Battery Electric Vehicle	<b>SoH</b> - State of Health
<b>CC</b> - Cruise Control	<b>SS</b> - Speed Symbol
<b>CMS</b> - Camera Monitoring System	<b>TPMS</b> - Tire Pressure Monitoring System
<b>CSC</b> - Cornering Stability Control	<b>TWI</b> - Tread Wear Indicator
<b>DAB</b> - Digital Audio Broadcasting	<b>VIN</b> - Vehicle identification number
<b>DC</b> - Direct Current	<b>VRU</b> - Vulnerable Road User's
<b>EBD</b> - Electronic Brakeforce Distribution	
<b>ELK</b> - Emergency Lane Keeping	
<b>EPB</b> - Electric Parking Brake	
<b>EPS</b> - Electric Power Steering	
<b>ESC</b> - Electronic Stability Control	
<b>EV</b> - Electric Vehicle	
<b>FCW</b> - Forward Collision Warning	
<b>FM</b> - Frequency Modulation	
<b>GPS</b> - Global Positioning System	
<b>HDC</b> - Hill Descent Control	
<b>HLA</b> - High Beam Light Assist	
<b>HMI</b> - Human-Machine Interface	
<b>HV</b> - High-voltage	
<b>iACC</b> - Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control	
<b>IBB</b> - Intelligent Brake Booster	
<b>ISA</b> - Intelligent Speed Assist	
<b>iSL</b> - Intelligent Speed Limiter	
<b>LDPOC</b> - Lane Departure Prevention- Oncoming traffic	
<b>LDW</b> - Lane Departure Warning	
<b>LSA</b> - Lane Safety Assist	
<b>LTE</b> - Long Term Evolution	
<b>LV</b> - Low-Voltage	
<b>NFC</b> - Near Field Communication	
<b>OBD</b> - On-Board Diagnostic	
<b>PIN</b> - Personal Identification Number	
<b>POI</b> - Point of Interest	

Publish Date : 01/2026



**Togg Care and Roadside Assistance: +49-711-7815-8644**  
**Togg Care e-mail: [toggcare@togg.eu](mailto:toggcare@togg.eu)**

